

**ARTEP 5-027-35-MTP**

**Mission Training Plan  
for the  
Engineer Company, Engineer  
Battalion (Light)**

**AUGUST 2005**

DISTRIBUTION RESTRICTION: Approved for public release; distribution is unlimited.

**HEADQUARTERS,  
DEPARTMENT OF THE ARMY**

**This publication is available at  
Army Knowledge Online ([www.us.army.mil](http://www.us.army.mil)) and  
General Dennis J. Reimer Training and Doctrine  
Digital Library at (<http://www.train.army.mil>).**

ARMY TRAINING AND  
EVALUATION PROGRAM  
No. 5-027-35-MTP

HEADQUARTERS  
DEPARTMENT OF THE ARMY  
Washington, DC, 1 August 2005

# Mission Training Plan for the Engineer Company, Engineer Battalion (Light)

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

	<u>Page</u>
<b>Table of Contents</b> .....	<b>i</b>
<b>Preface</b> .....	<b>ii</b>
<b>Chapter 1. Unit Training</b> .....	<b>1-1</b>
<b>Chapter 2. Training Matrixes</b> .....	<b>2-1</b>
<b>Chapter 3. Mission Outlines/Training Plans</b> .....	<b>3-1</b>
<b>Chapter 4. Training Exercise</b> .....	<b>4-1</b>
<b>Chapter 5. Training and Evaluation Outlines</b> .....	<b>5-1</b>
<b>Chapter 6. External Evaluation</b> .....	<b>6-1</b>
<b>Appendix A - Sample Operation Order</b> .....	<b>A-1</b>
<b>Appendix B - Threat Analysis</b> .....	<b>B-1</b>
<b>Appendix C - Metric Conversion Chart</b> .....	<b>C-1</b>
<b>Glossary</b> .....	<b>Glossary-1</b>
<b>References</b> .....	<b>References-1</b>

DISTRIBUTION RESTRICTION: Approved for public release; distribution is unlimited.

\*This publication supersedes ARTEP 5-027-35-MTP, 18 October 2000; ARTEP 5-053-35-MTP, 20 June 2001; ARTEP 5-157-35-MTP, 2 October 2000; ARTEP 5-217-35-MTP, 2 October 2000; ARTEP 5-427-35-MTP, 20 June 2001; ARTEP 5-447-35-MTP, 2 October 2000; and ARTEP 5-447-37-MTP, 20 June 2001.

## PREFACE

This mission training plan (MTP) provides Active Army and Reserve Component (RC) training managers with a descriptive, mission-oriented training program to train the unit to perform its critical wartime operations. This MTP aligns with and is part of the United States (U.S.) Army Training and Tactical Doctrine Program. While missions and deployment assignments impact on the priorities, the operations described here are expected to be executed with a high level of proficiency. Each unit is expected to train, as a minimum, to the standards of the training and evaluation outlines (T&EOs) in this MTP. Standards for training may be raised, but they may not be lowered.

This MTP applies to the engineer company, engineer battalion table(s) of organization and equipment (TOE) 050271000, 05053L000, 05153L000, 05157L000, 05217L000, 05427L000, 05447L100, and 05447L200.

This publication applies to the Active Army, the Army National Guard (ARNG)/the Army National Guard of the United States (ARNGUS), and the United States Army Reserve (USAR).

The proponent for this publication is United States Army Training and Doctrine Command (TRADOC). Send comments and recommendations on Department of the Army (DA) Form 2028 (Recommended Changes to Publications and Blank Forms) directly to Commandant, United States Army Engineer School, ATTN: ATSE-DT, Collective Training Division, 320 MANSCEN Loop, Fort Leonard Wood, MO 65473-8929.

Unless this publication states otherwise, masculine nouns and pronouns do not refer exclusively to men.

## CHAPTER 1

### Unit Training

1-1. General. This MTP provides the commander and leaders with guidance on how to train the key missions of the unit. The specific details of the unit training program will depend on the—

- Unit mission-essential task list (METL).
- Chain-of-command training directives and guidance.
- Unit training priorities.
- Availability of training resources and areas.

1-2. Supporting Material. This MTP describes a critical wartime mission-oriented training program that is part of the next higher-echelon training program. This relationship is illustrated in Figure 1-1. The unit training program consists of the following publications:

a. Army Training and Evaluation Program (ARTEP) 5-500-68-MTP for the engineer staff (to be published within 6 months). This MTP indicates the relationship of the battalion training program to the next higher-level training program.

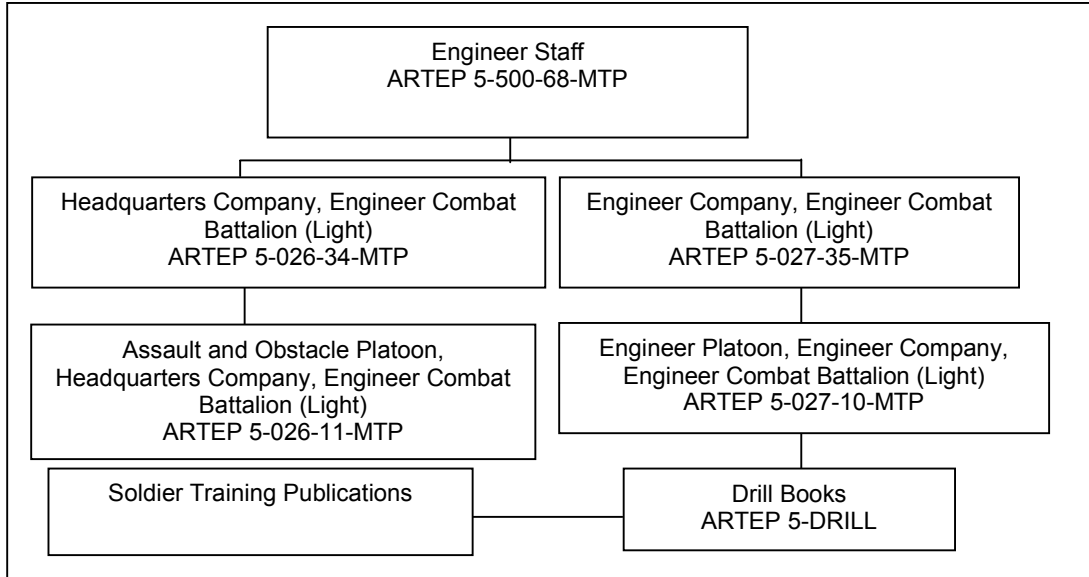
b. ARTEP 5-026-34-MTP for the engineer combat company, engineer combat battalion. This MTP indicates the relationship of the company training program to the battalion training program.

c. ARTEP 5-027-35-MTP and ARTEP 5-027-10-MTP for the engineer platoons, engineer combat company, engineer combat battalion. These MTPs indicate the relationship of the platoon training programs to the company training program.

d. ARTEP 5-026-11-MTP for the assault and obstacle platoon, headquarters company, engineer combat battalion (light). This MTP indicates the relationship of the platoon training program to the company training program.

d. ARTEP 5-DRILL for the engineer drills. The unit must sustain drills. They are U.S. Army standard and may not be modified.

e. Soldier training publications (STPs) for the appropriate military occupational specialties (MOSs) and skill levels.



**Figure 1-1. MTP Echelon Relationship**

1-3. Contents. This MTP is organized into six chapters and three appendices.

a. Chapter 1, Unit Training, provides the explanation and organization of an MTP. This chapter explains how to use an MTP in establishing an effective training program.

b. Chapter 2, Training Matrixes, shows the relationship between the mission and the collective tasks.

c. Chapter 3, Mission Outlines and Training Plans, presents a graphic portrayal of the relationship between missions and their subordinate tasks.

d. Chapter 4, Training Exercise, consists of a sample training exercise. This exercise provides training information and a preconstructed sample scenario. It can serve as a part of an internal or external evaluation. This exercise may be modified to suit the training needs of the unit.

e. Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines, contains the T&EOs for the unit. T&EOs are the foundation of the MTP and the collective training of the unit. Each task is a T&EO that identifies task steps, performance measures, individual and leader tasks, and opposing forces (OPFOR) countertasks. The unit must master designated collective tasks to perform its critical wartime operations. T&EOs can be trained separately, in a situational training exercise (STX), in a field training exercise (FTX), or in a live-fire exercise. For collective live-fire standards, the trainer needs to refer to the applicable gunnery manual for the appropriate course of fire. Those standards and courses of fire need to be integrated into the training exercise. Each T&EO is part of a mission and, in various combinations, are used to develop training exercises.

(1) Format. T&EOs are prepared for every collective task that supports critical wartime operation accomplishment. Each T&EO contains the following items:

(a) Elements. This identifies the unit or unit element(s) that perform the task.

(b) **Task.** This describes the action to be performed by the unit and provides the task number.

(c) **Reference.** This identifies the publication used to develop the task and is in parenthesis following the task number. If more than one reference is used, the reference that contains the most information (primary reference) about the task is listed first and underlined. If there is only one reference, it is not underlined.

(d) **Iteration.** This is used to identify how many times the task is performed and evaluated during training. The M identifies when the task is performed in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

(e) **Commander/leader assessment.** This is used by the unit leadership to assess the proficiency of the unit in performing the task to standard. Assessments are subjective in nature. Therefore, use all available evaluation data and subunit-leader input to assess the overall capability of the organization to accomplish the task. Use the following ratings:

- **T - Trained.** The unit is trained and has demonstrated its proficiency in accomplishing the task to wartime standards.
- **P - Needs practice.** The unit needs to practice the task. Performance has demonstrated that the unit does not achieve the task to standard without some difficulty or has failed to perform some task steps to standard.
- **U - Untrained.** The unit cannot demonstrate an ability to achieve wartime proficiency.

(f) **Conditions.** This describes the situation or environment in which the unit is to perform the collective task.

(g) **Task standards.** This states the performance criteria that a unit must achieve to successfully execute the task. This overall standard should be the focus of training and should be understood by every Soldier. The trainer or evaluator determines the unit training status by using performance observation measurements (where applicable) and his judgment. The unit must be evaluated in the context of the mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC). The conditions should be as similar as possible for all evaluated elements. This will establish a common baseline for unit performance.

(h) **Task steps and performance measures.** This is a list of actions that the unit is to perform to complete the task. These actions are stated in terms of observable performance for evaluating training proficiency. The task steps are arranged sequentially along with any supporting individual tasks and their references. An asterisk (\*) to the left of the step number indicates the leader tasks within each T&EO. If the unit fails to correctly perform one of the task steps to standard, it has failed to achieve the overall task standard. The task step may contain performance measures that must be accomplished to correctly perform the task step.

(i) **GO/NO-GO column.** This column is provided for annotating the performance of the task steps. Evaluate each performance measure for a task step and place an X in the appropriate column. A major portion of the performance measures must be marked a GO for the task step to be successfully performed.

(j) Task performance/evaluation summary block. This block provides the trainer with a means of recording the total number of task steps and performance measures evaluated and those evaluated as GO. It also provides the evaluator with a means to rate the unit demonstrated performance as a GO or NO-GO. It also provides the leader with a historical record for five training iterations.

(k) Supporting individual tasks. This is a listing of all supporting individual tasks required to correctly perform the task. The task number and task title for each individual task are listed.

(l) Supporting collective tasks. This is a listing of all supporting collective tasks required to correctly perform the task. The task number and task title for each collective task are listed.

(m) Opposing forces tasks. These standards specify overall OPFOR performance for each collective task. The standards ensure that the OPFOR Soldiers accomplish meaningful training and force the training unit to perform its task to standard or lose to the OPFOR. The OPFOR standards specify what must be accomplished—not how it must be accomplished. The OPFOR must always attain its task standards, using tactics consistent with the type of enemy being portrayed.

(2) Usage. T&EOs can be used to train or evaluate a single task. Several T&EOs can be used to train or evaluate a group of tasks such as an STX or FTX.

f. Chapter 6, External Evaluation, provides instructions for the planning, preparation, and execution of an external evaluation.

g. Appendix A, Sample Operation Order, contains a sample operation order (OPORD) to be used with the sample exercise in Chapter 4.

h. Appendix B, Threat Analysis, describes local, regional, and global threats and special situations that impact operations.

i. Appendix C, Metric Conversion Chart, contains a metric measurement conversion chart.

#### 1-4. Missions and Tasks.

a. This MTP concerns specific missions found in the TOE and an implied mission that the unit must perform in order to accomplish the specified missions. The critical missions are the focus for the unit. The commander may supplement these missions with his own. The following is a listing of the missions for the unit:

- Provide engineer support to countermobility operations.
- Fight as infantry.
- Conduct general engineer operations.
- Provide engineer support to mobility operations.
- Perform survivability construction.
- Sustain unit operations.
- Defend the unit.
- Conduct unit survivability operations.



b. Each of these tasks may be trained individually or jointly. Training is based on the criteria described in the T&EOs. Several T&EOs can be trained as an STX. Various combinations of STXs can be used to develop an FTX for the unit to practice its entire mission responsibility. Several STXs can be developed into an external evaluation that is designed by the next higher echelon to evaluate the ability of the unit to perform multiple missions under stress in a realistic environment.

c. Squad tasks are trained in much the same way as described above. However, the squad leader must also train the drills provided in the drill book.

d. Leader tasks that support unit missions are trained through STP training, battle simulations, and execution of unit missions.

e. Individual tasks that support unit tasks are mastered by training to the standards outlined in the appropriate STPs. The T&EOs in Chapter 5 show the individual tasks that support collective-task training.

1-5. Training Principles. This MTP is based on the training principles explained in Field Manual (FM) 7-0.

1-6. Training Strategy. The training program, developed and executed by the engineer battalion to train to standards in its critical wartime missions, will be a component of the Army Combined Arms Training Strategy (CATS). The purpose of CATS is to provide direction and guidance on how the total Army will train and identify the resources required to support that training. CATS provides the tools that enable the Army to focus and manage training in an integrated manner. Central to CATS is a series of proponent-generated unit and institutional strategies that describe the training events and resources required to facilitate training to standard. The information is located on the Army Knowledge Online (AKO) website at <<http://www.us.army.mil>>.

a. The unit training strategies central to CATS provide the commander with a descriptive menu for training. These strategies reflect that while there is an optimal way to train to standard, it is unlikely that all units in the Army will have the exact mix of resources required to execute an optimal training strategy.

b. The unit training strategy is a descriptive training strategy that provides a means for training the battalion to standard by listing required training events, critical training gates, training event frequencies, and training resources. The commander selects those tasks required to train his METL from this MTP.

c. The unit training strategy will be comprised of three separate training strategies. When integrated with the training tasks found in this MTP, they form a comprehensive and focused training strategy that allows the unit to train to standard. The elements of the unit training strategy are discussed below.

(1) Maneuver- and collective-training strategy. The maneuver- and collective-training strategy is intended to provide a set of recommended training frequencies for key training events in a unit and depicts those resources that are required to support the training events.

(2) Gunnery strategy. The gunnery strategy is based on weapons systems found in the unit and is intended to provide an annual training plan and to depict resources required to support weapons training. Data for the gunnery strategy comes from the Standards in Training Commission (STRAC) manual or the appropriate FMs.

(3) Soldier strategy. The Soldier strategy provides an annual plan for training and maintaining skills at the individual level and lists the resources required to train a Soldier.

d. A vital element in the unit training strategy is the identification of critical training gates. Critical training gates are defined as training events that must be conducted to standard before moving on to a more difficult or resource-intensive training event or task. Training gates follow the crawl, walk, run training methodology. For instance, if the unit training strategy calls for conducting an FTX, and an STX has been identified as a critical training gate for the FTX, the training tasks in the STX must be trained to standard before conducting the FTX. Standards for all tasks must be clearly defined so that the trainer can assess the preparedness of the Soldiers, or units, to move on to more complex training events. The provision for critical training gates is made recognizing that the unit METL and the commander's assessment of his unit training status will determine the selection and timing of the collective-training exercises in a specific unit training strategy.

e. When developing the unit training plan, the commander identifies from the MTP the training tasks required to train his METL.

1-7. Training Conduct. This MTP is designed to facilitate planning, preparing, and conducting unit training as explained in FMs 7-0 and 7-1. The commander performs the following:

a. Assigns the missions and supporting tasks for training based on his METL and guidance from the next higher headquarters (HQ). Trainers must plan and execute training to support this guidance.

b. Reviews the mission outline in Chapter 3 to determine whether the STXs and the FTXs provided will support, or can be modified to support, the command guidance. If they do not support the guidance or if they need to be modified, refer to the matrix in Chapter 2. This matrix provides a list of all critical collective tasks, drills, and individual tasks that must be mastered to perform the mission.

c. Prioritizes the tasks that need training. There is never time to train everything. Orient the training toward the greatest challenges and the most difficult sustainment skills.

d. Integrates training tasks into the training schedule, using the following procedures:

(1) List the tasks in the priority and frequency that they need to be trained.

(2) Determine the amount of time required and how to use multiechelon training for the best results.

(3) Determine where the training can take place.

(4) Determine who will be responsible for what. The leader of the element being trained must always be involved.

(5) Organize needs into blocks of time and training vehicles.

e. Approves the list of tasks to be trained and schedules them on the unit training schedule.

f. Determines the equipment and supplies needed to conduct the training.

g. Keeps subordinate leaders informed and oversees their training. The standards must be rigidly enforced.

1-8. Force Protection.

a. **Safety.** Safety is a component of force protection. Commanders, leaders, and Soldiers use risk assessment and risk management to tie force protection into the military around the mission. Risk management assigns responsibility, institutionalizes the commander review of operational safety, and leads to decision making at a level of command that is appropriate to the risk. The objective of safety is to help units protect combat power through accident prevention, which enables units to win quickly and decisively, with minimum losses. Safety is an integral part of all combat operations. Safety begins with readiness that determines the ability of the unit to perform its METL to standard. Readiness standards addressed during METL assessment are as follows:

- (1) Soldiers with the self-discipline to consistently perform tasks to standard.
- (2) Leaders who are ready, willing, and able to enforce standards.
- (3) Training that provides skills needed for performance to standard.
- (4) Standards and procedures for task preferences that are clear and practical.
- (5) Support for task preference, including equipment, personnel, maintenance, facilities, and services.

b. **Risk Management.** Risk management addresses the root causes (readiness shortcomings) of accidents. It helps commanders and leaders identify and predict the next accident. Risk management is a way to put more realism into training without paying the price in deaths, injuries, or damaged equipment. Risk management is a five-step, cyclic process that is easily integrated into the decision-making process outlined in FM 5-0.

**Step 1.** Identify Any Hazards. Identify the most probable hazards for the mission.

**Step 2.** Assess the Hazards. Analyze each hazard to determine the probability of it causing an accident and the probable effect of the accident. Identify control options to eliminate or reduce the hazard. The Army standard risk assessment matrix in Figure 1-2 is a tool to use for assessing hazards.

**Step 3.** Make Risk Decisions. Weigh the risk against the benefits of performing the operation. Accept no unnecessary risks, and make any remaining risk decisions at the proper level of command.

**Step 4.** Implement Controls. Integrate specific controls into operation plans (OPLANs), OPODs, standing operating procedures (SOPs), and rehearsals. Communicate controls to the individual Soldier.

**Step 5.** Supervise. Determine the effectiveness of controls in reducing the probability and effect of identified hazards, to include a follow-up and an after-action review (AAR). Develop lessons learned.

		Risk Assessment Code Matrix				
		Hazard Probability				
		Frequent A	Likely B	Occasional C	Seldom D	Unlikely E
Severity	Catastrophic I	Extremely high	Extremely high	High	High	Moderate
	Critical II	Extremely high	High	High	Moderate	Low
	Moderate III	High	Moderate	Moderate	Low	Low
	Negligible IV	Moderate	Low	Low	Low	Low

Identify each task and the hazards associated with the task. Go to the risk assessment code matrix. In the left column, identify the severity effect of the hazard. In the top row, identify the hazard probability. The intersection of the severity column and the probability row is the initial risk and should be annotated on the risk assessment worksheet. The following are standard definitions to assist in determining the severity and hazard probability:

- **Risk levels.**
  - **Extremely high:** Loss of the ability to accomplish the mission.
  - **High:** Mission capabilities significantly degraded in terms of required mission standards.
  - **Moderate:** Mission capabilities degraded in terms of required mission standards.
  - **Low:** Little or no impact on accomplishing the mission.
- **Severity.**
  - **Catastrophic:** Death or permanent total disability, system loss, or major property damage.
  - **Critical:** Permanent partial disability, temporary total disability in excess of three months, major system damage, or significant property damage.
  - **Moderate:** Minor injury, lost workday accident, compensable injury or illness, minor system damage, or minor property damage.
  - **Negligible:** First aid, minor supportive medical treatment, or minor system impairment.
- **Probability.**
  - **Frequent:** Occurs often, continuously experienced.
  - **Likely:** Occurs several times.
  - **Occasional:** Occurs sporadically.
  - **Seldom:** Unlikely, but could occur at some time.
  - **Unlikely:** Can assume it will not occur.

**Figure 1-2. Risk Assessment Matrix**

c. Chain of Command. Safety demands total chain-of-command involvement in planning, preparing, executing, and evaluating training. Responsibilities of the chain of command include—

- (1) Commanders.
  - (a) Seek optimum, not adequate, performance.
  - (b) Specify the risk you will accept to accomplish the mission.
  - (c) Select risk reductions provided by the staff.
  - (d) Accept or reject residual risk, based on the benefit to be derived.
  - (e) Train and motivate leaders at all levels to effectively use risk management concepts.
- (2) Staff.
  - (a) Assist the commander in assessing risks and developing risk reduction options for training.
  - (b) Integrate risk controls in plans, orders, METL standards, and performance measures.
  - (c) Eliminate unnecessary safety restrictions that diminish training effectiveness.
  - (d) Assess safety performance during training.
  - (e) Evaluate safety performance during AARs.
- (3) Subordinate leaders.
  - (a) Apply effective risk management concepts and methods consistently to the operations they lead.
  - (b) Report risk issues beyond their control or authority to their superiors.
- (4) Individual Soldiers.
  - (a) Report unsafe conditions and acts, and correct these situations when possible.
  - (b) Establish a buddy system to keep a safety watch on one another.
  - (c) Take responsibility for personal safety.
  - (d) Work as a team member.
  - (e) Modify your own risk behavior.

d. **Fratricide.** Fratricide is the employment of weapons, with the intent to kill the enemy or destroy its equipment, that results in unforeseen and unintentional death, injury, or damage to friendly personnel or equipment. Fratricide prevention is a component of force protection and is closely related to safety. Fratricide is, by definition, an accident. Risk assessment and risk management are mechanisms used to control the incidence of fratricide.

(1) **Causes.** The primary causes of fratricide are—

(a) **Direct-fire control plan failures.** These failures result when units fail to develop defensive and, particularly, offensive-fire control plans.

(b) **Land navigation failures.** These failures result when units stray out of the sector, report incorrect locations, or become disoriented.

(c) **Combat identification failures.** These failures include gunners or pilots being unable to distinguish thermal and optical signatures near the maximum range of their sighting systems and units in proximity mistaking each other for the enemy under limited-visibility conditions.

(d) **Inadequate control measures.** These occur when units fail to disseminate the minimum maneuver and fire support control measures that are necessary to tie control measures to recognizable terrain or events.

(e) **Reporting communication failures.** Units at all levels face problems in generating timely, accurate, and complete reports as locations and tactical situations change.

(f) **Weapons errors.** Lapses in individual discipline lead to charge errors, accidental discharges, mistakes with explosives or hand grenades, and similar incidents.

(g) **Battlefield hazards.** Unexploded ordnance (UXO), unmarked or unrecorded minefields, scatterable mines (SCATMINES), and booby traps litter the battlefield. Failure to mark, record, remove, or anticipate these hazards increases the risk of friendly casualties.

(2) **Results.** Fratricide results in unacceptable losses and increases the risk of mission failure. Fratricide undermines the ability of the unit to survive and function. Units experiencing fratricide observe these consequences:

(a) Loss of confidence in unit leadership.

(b) Increase of self-doubt among leaders.

(c) Hesitation to use supporting combat systems.

(d) Oversupervision of units.

(e) Hesitation to conduct night operations.

(f) Loss of aggressiveness during fire and maneuver.

(g) Loss of initiative.

(h) Disrupted operations.

(i) General degradation of cohesiveness, morale, and combat power.

1-9. Environmental Risk and Protection. Protection of natural resources has become an ever-increasing concern in Army training programs. It is the responsibility of all unit leaders to minimize and, if possible, eliminate damage to the environment when conducting training exercises. Environmental protection is a critical part of the overall risk management process. It is based on the same philosophy and principles that guide the unit in controlling operational hazards, including the use of the five steps of risk management. The following discussion focuses on specific environmental considerations for each step of the risk management process. See FM 3-100.4 for more detailed information.

**Step 1. Identify Hazards.** Identify potential sources of environmental degradation during the analysis of METT-TC factors. This requires the identification of environmental hazards, which are conditions with the potential for polluting air, soil, or water and/or destroying significant natural, cultural, or historical resources.

**Step 2. Assess Hazards to Determine Risks.** Analyze the potential severity of environmental degradation for each training activity. The risk impact value of operations indicates the severity of environmental degradation. Quantify the risk to the environment resulting from the operation as extremely high, high, medium, or low.

**Step 3. Develop Controls and Make Risk Decisions.** Based on the results of the risk assessment, make decisions and develop measures to eliminate or reduce significant environmental risks. Risk decisions are made at a level of command that corresponds to the degree of risk. It is critical to brief the chain of command and all other responsible individuals and agencies (to include the installation environmental office, if applicable) on proposed plans and pertinent high-risk environmental factors.

**Step 4. Implement Controls.** Implement the necessary environmental-protection measures by integrating them into plans, orders, SOPs, training performance standards, and rehearsals.

**Step 5. Supervise and Evaluate.** Enforce environmental-protection standards during supervision and evaluation of all training activities.

1-10. Evaluation. The T&EOs in Chapter 5 describe the standards that must be met for each task.

a. Evaluations can be either internal or external. Internal evaluations are conducted at all levels, and they must be inherent in all training. External evaluations are usually more formal and are normally conducted by a HQ that is two levels above the evaluated unit. See Chapter 6 for more information on external evaluations.

b. A critical weakness in training is the failure to evaluate each task every time it is executed. The ARTEP concept is based on simultaneous training and evaluation. Too often, leaders do not practice continuous evaluation. Soldiers or small units are trained to perform a task to standard, and then later, when they execute that task as part of a training exercise, they execute it poorly or incorrectly and are not corrected. For this program to work, trainers and leaders must continually evaluate training as it is being executed.

c. Leaders should emphasize direct, on-the-spot evaluations. Correcting poor performance during individual or small-group training is easy to do. In higher-level exercises, it is usually not feasible to do this with outside evaluators, but evaluations should not be totally eliminated. Plan AARs at frequent, logical intervals during the exercises (usually after the completion of a major subordinate task). This is a proven technique that allows the correction of performance shortcomings while they are still fresh in everyone's mind. Also, it gets everyone involved and prevents the reinforcement of bad habits.

d. FM 7-1 provides detailed instructions for conducting an AAR. It also provides detailed guidance on coaching and critiquing during training.

1-11. Feedback. Recommendations for improvement of this MTP are requested. Feedback will help to ensure that this MTP answers the training needs of units in the field. Please make your comments on DA Form 2028 or DA Form 7507 (ARTEP Mission Training Plan User Feedback) and send it to the address provided in the preface.



**CHAPTER 2**

**Training Matrixes**

2-1. General. The training matrix assists the commander in planning the training of his unit personnel. Figure 2-1 provides mission identification for the unit.

<b>Mission Identification Table</b>
<b><u>Mission Title</u></b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Provide Engineer Support to Countermobility Operations <b>(COUNTERMOBILITY)</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Fight as Infantry <b>(FIGHT AS INFANTRY)</b></li> </ul> </li> <li>• Conduct General Engineer Operations <b>(GENERAL ENGINEERING)</b></li> <li>• Provide Engineer Support to Mobility Operations <b>(MOBILITY)</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Perform Survivability Construction <b>(SURVIVABILITY CONSTRUCTION)</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Sustain Unit Operations <b>(SUSTAIN OPERATIONS)</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Defend the Unit <b>(UNIT DEFENSE)</b></li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>• Conduct Unit Survivability Operations <b>(UNIT SURVIVABILITY)</b></li> </ul>

**Figure 2-1. Mission Identification Table**

2-2. Mission-to-Collective Task Matrix. This matrix (Figure 2-2) identifies the mission and its supporting collective tasks. The tasks are listed under the appropriate battlefield operating system (BOS), indicated by an X in the matrix. The BOSs that are used in this matrix are defined in United States Army Training and Doctrine Command (TRADOC) Pamphlet (Pam) 11-9. A specific mission is trained by using the collective tasks in the vertical column for the mission. Based on the proficiency of the unit, training is focused on operational weaknesses.

Collective Tasks	Countermobility	Fight As Infantry	General Engineering	Mobility
<b>Develop Intelligence</b>				
05-1-0023 Plan and Direct Engineer Intelligence Collection				
05-1-6000 Identify Geospatial Support Requirements				
05-2-0027 Perform an Engineer Battlefield Assessment (Company)	<b>X</b>		<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>
19-3-3105.05-T01A Process Captured Documents and Equipment				
71-2-0332.05-T01A Maintain Operations Security (OPSEC)				

Collective Tasks	Countermobility	Fight As Infantry	General Engineering	Mobility
<b>Deploy/Conduct Maneuver</b>				
05-1-0011 Reorganize as Infantry		X		
05-1-0015 Fight as Infantry		X		
05-1-2000 Prepare an Obstacle Plan	X			
05-2-0015 Report Obstacle Information	X			X
05-2-0114 Provide Engineer Support to Breaching Operations				X
05-2-1004 Support a Water Crossing Operation				X
05-2-1005 Conduct Enemy or Unobserved Minefield Clearing Operations				X
05-2-3007 Conduct Quartering Party Operations				
07-1-1923.05-T01A React to Indirect Fire		X		
07-2-1125.05-T01A Conduct Passage of Lines (Passing/Stationary)		X		
07-2-1136.05-T02A Occupy an Assembly Area (AA)		X		
07-2-1301.05-T01A Conduct a Convoy				
07-3-1123.05-T01A Conduct a Tactical Road March		X		
07-3-1135.05-T01A Conduct Actions at Danger Areas		X		
07-3-C211.05-T01A Move Tactically		X		
<b>Protect the Force</b>				
03-2-3008.05-T01A Conduct a Radiological, Chemical, or Biological Reconnaissance or Survey				
03-3-C201.05-T01A Prepare for Operations Under Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical (NBC) Conditions				
03-3-C202.05-T01A Prepare for a Chemical Attack				
03-3-C203.05-T01A Respond to a Chemical Attack				
03-3-C205.05-T01A Prepare for a Friendly Nuclear Strike				

Collective Tasks	Countermobility	Fight As Infantry	General Engineering	Mobility
03-3-C206.05-T01A Prepare for a Nuclear Attack				
03-3-C208.05-T01A Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area				X
03-3-C209.05-T01A React to Smoke Operations				
03-3-C222.05-T01A Respond to the Residual Effects of a Nuclear Attack				
03-3-C223.05-T01A Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack				
03-3-C224.05-T01A Conduct Operational Decontamination				
03-3-C226.05-T01A Cross a Chemically Contaminated Area				X
05-1-3001 Direct Survivability Construction				
05-2-3002 Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment			X	
05-2-3003 Defend a Convoy Against a Ground Attack				
05-2-3005 Conduct an Extraction From a Minefield				
05-2-3008 Emplace a Hasty Protective Row Minefield	X			
05-3-3000 Construct Bunkers and Shelters				
05-3-3007 Remove a Hasty Protective Row Minefield				X
05-3-3013 Construct Vehicle Fighting Positions	X			
05-3-3014 Construct Vehicle Protective Positions	X		X	
05-3-7005 Disable Critical Equipment and Material				
05-5-3009 Prepare Crew-Served Weapons Fighting Positions		X		
07-2-0414.05-T01A Establish a Company Defensive Position		X		
07-3-1112.05-T01A React to an Ambush		X		
09-2-0337.05-T01A React to Unexploded Ordnance (UXO)				

Collective Tasks	Countermobility	Fight As Infantry	General Engineering	Mobility
19-3-2204.05-T01A Employ Physical Security Measures				
44-1-C220.05-T01A Use Passive Air Defense Measures				
44-1-C221.05-T01A Take Active Combined Arms Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms				
71-2-0326.05-T01A Perform Risk Management Procedures				
<b>Perform CSS and Sustainment</b>				
05-2-0050    Coordinate for Medical Services				
05-2-0051    Coordinate for Food Service Support				
05-2-0080    Coordinate the Location of Class IV and Class V Supply Points	<b>X</b>			<b>X</b>
05-2-0702    Repair Airfields			<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>
05-2-1054    Plan/Direct Aerial Logistics Operations				
05-2-1126    Coordinate for Organizational Maintenance Support				
05-2-7000    Conduct Combat Refueling Operations				
05-2-7003    Receive and Distribute Throughput Supplies				
05-2-9001    Provide Opposing Forces (OPFOR) Support to Training Exercises		<b>X</b>		
05-3-1010    Construct an Expedient Landing Zone (LZ) for Helicopters			<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>
08-2-C316.05-T01A Transport Casualties (for Units Without Medical Treatment Personnel)				
08-2-R303.05-T01A Conduct Battlefield Stress Reduction and Stress Prevention Procedures				
08-2-R315.05-T01A Perform Field Sanitation Functions				
10-2-0318.05-T01A Perform Unit Graves Registration (GRREG) Operations				

<b>Collective Tasks</b>	<b>Countermobility</b>	<b>Fight As Infantry</b>	<b>General Engineering</b>	<b>Mobility</b>
10-2-0319.05-T01A Receive Airdrop Resupply				
10-2-0320.05-T01A Provide Company Supply Support				
11-5-0050.05-T01A Operate a Telephone Switch (Manual/SB22/PT)				
11-5-0121.05-T01A Provide a Field Cable or Wire System				
19-3-3106.05-T01A Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (EPWs)		<b>X</b>		
43-2-0001.05-T01A Conduct Unit Level Maintenance Operations				
55-2-0325.05-T01A Receive External Sling Load Resupply				
<b>Exercise Command and Control</b>				
05-1-0017 Integrate Augmentation Support				
05-2-2013 Plan and Control Tactical Obstacles	<b>X</b>			<b>X</b>
05-2-7008 Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)				
05-3-0013 Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures				
05-3-0300 Integrate Engineer Elements Into the Maneuver Element	<b>X</b>			<b>X</b>
05-6-0002 Prepare an Engineer Estimate				
05-6-0003 Prepare an Engineer Annex				
05-6-0010 Establish a Command Post (CP)	<b>X</b>		<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>
11-3-0214.05-T01A Establish and Operate a Single-Channel Voice Radio Net				
11-5-1102.05-T01A Install, Operate, and Maintain a Single-Channel, Ground and Airborne Radio System (SINCGARS) Frequency Hopping (FH) Net				
12-2-0321.05-T01A Maintain Company Strength				

Collective Tasks	Countermobility	Fight As Infantry	General Engineering	Mobility
12-2-0338.05-T01A Maintain Troop Morale and Combat Capability				

Collective Tasks	Survivability Construction	Sustain Operations	Unit Defense	Unit Survivability
<b>Develop Intelligence</b>				
05-1-0023 Plan and Direct Engineer Intelligence Collection		X		
05-1-6000 Identify Geospatial Support Requirements		X		
05-2-0027 Perform an Engineer Battlefield Assessment (Company)		X		
19-3-3105.05-T01A Process Captured Documents and Equipment		X	X	X
71-2-0332.05-T01A Maintain Operations Security (OPSEC)		X	X	
<b>Deploy/Conduct Maneuver</b>				
05-1-0011 Reorganize as Infantry				
05-1-0015 Fight as Infantry				
05-1-2000 Prepare an Obstacle Plan		X		
05-2-0015 Report Obstacle Information				
05-2-0114 Provide Engineer Support to Breaching Operations		X		
05-2-1004 Support a Water Crossing Operation		X		
05-2-1005 Conduct Enemy or Unobserved Minefield Clearing Operations				
05-2-3007 Conduct Quartering Party Operations		X	X	X
07-1-1923.05-T01A React to Indirect Fire		X	X	X
07-2-1125.05-T01A Conduct Passage of Lines (Passing/Stationary)		X	X	
07-2-1136.05-T02A Occupy an Assembly Area (AA)		X	X	X
07-2-1301.05-T01A Conduct a Convoy		X		
07-3-1123.05-T01A Conduct a Tactical Road March		X	X	
07-3-1135.05-T01A Conduct Actions at Danger Areas		X	X	X

Collective Tasks	Survivability Construction	Sustain Operations	Unit Defense	Unit Survivability
07-3-C211.05-T01A Move Tactically		X	X	X
<b>Protect the Force</b>				
03-2-3008.05-T01A Conduct a Radiological, Chemical, or Biological Reconnaissance or Survey		X	X	X
03-3-C201.05-T01A Prepare for Operations Under Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical (NBC) Conditions		X	X	X
03-3-C202.05-T01A Prepare for a Chemical Attack		X	X	X
03-3-C203.05-T01A Respond to a Chemical Attack				X
03-3-C205.05-T01A Prepare for a Friendly Nuclear Strike		X	X	X
03-3-C206.05-T01A Prepare for a Nuclear Attack		X	X	X
03-3-C208.05-T01A Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area		X		X
03-3-C209.05-T01A React to Smoke Operations				X
03-3-C222.05-T01A Respond to the Residual Effects of a Nuclear Attack				X
03-3-C223.05-T01A Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack				X
03-3-C224.05-T01A Conduct Operational Decontamination		X		X
03-3-C226.05-T01A Cross a Chemically Contaminated Area		X		X
05-1-3001 Direct Survivability Construction	X			
05-2-3002 Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment		X	X	X
05-2-3003 Defend a Convoy Against a Ground Attack		X	X	
05-2-3005 Conduct an Extraction From a Minefield				X
05-2-3008 Emplace a Hasty Protective Row Minefield			X	
05-3-3000 Construct Bunkers and Shelters	X		X	X

Collective Tasks		Survivability Construction	Sustain Operations	Unit Defense	Unit Survivability
05-3-3007	Remove a Hasty Protective Row Minefield		X	X	X
05-3-3013	Construct Vehicle Fighting Positions	X		X	X
05-3-3014	Construct Vehicle Protective Positions	X		X	X
05-3-7005	Disable Critical Equipment and Material		X	X	X
05-5-3009	Prepare Crew-Served Weapons Fighting Positions	X		X	X
07-2-0414.05-T01A	Establish a Company Defensive Position			X	X
07-3-1112.05-T01A	React to an Ambush				X
09-2-0337.05-T01A	React to Unexploded Ordnance (UXO)		X		X
19-3-2204.05-T01A	Employ Physical Security Measures		X	X	
44-1-C220.05-T01A	Use Passive Air Defense Measures		X	X	X
44-1-C221.05-T01A	Take Active Combined Arms Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms		X	X	X
71-2-0326.05-T01A	Perform Risk Management Procedures		X		X
<b>Perform CSS and Sustainment</b>					
05-2-0050	Coordinate for Medical Services		X		X
05-2-0051	Coordinate for Food Service Support		X		
05-2-0080	Coordinate the Location of Class IV and Class V Supply Points	X	X	X	X
05-2-0702	Repair Airfields		X		
05-2-1054	Plan/Direct Aerial Logistics Operations		X		
05-2-1126	Coordinate for Organizational Maintenance Support		X		
05-2-7000	Conduct Combat Refueling Operations		X		
05-2-7003	Receive and Distribute Throughput Supplies		X		
05-2-9001	Provide Opposing Forces (OPFOR) Support to Training Exercises		X		



Collective Tasks		Survivability Construction	Sustain Operations	Unit Defense	Unit Survivability
05-3-1010	Construct an Expedient Landing Zone (LZ) for Helicopters		X		
08-2-C316.05-T01A	Transport Casualties (for Units Without Medical Treatment Personnel)		X		X
08-2-R303.05-T01A	Conduct Battlefield Stress Reduction and Stress Prevention Procedures		X		X
08-2-R315.05-T01A	Perform Field Sanitation Functions		X		X
10-2-0318.05-T01A	Perform Unit Graves Registration (GRREG) Operations		X		
10-2-0319.05-T01A	Receive Airdrop Resupply		X		X
10-2-0320.05-T01A	Provide Company Supply Support		X		X
11-5-0050.05-T01A	Operate a Telephone Switch (Manual/SB22/PT)		X		X
11-5-0121.05-T01A	Provide a Field Cable or Wire System		X		
19-3-3106.05-T01A	Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (EPWs)		X	X	
43-2-0001.05-T01A	Conduct Unit Level Maintenance Operations		X		
55-2-0325.05-T01A	Receive External Sling Load Resupply		X		
<b>Exercise Command and Control</b>					
05-1-0017	Integrate Augmentation Support		X		
05-2-2013	Plan and Control Tactical Obstacles				
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)		X		
05-3-0013	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures		X		
05-3-0300	Integrate Engineer Elements Into the Maneuver Element		X		
05-6-0002	Prepare an Engineer Estimate		X		

<b>Collective Tasks</b>	<b>Survivability Construction</b>	<b>Sustain Operations</b>	<b>Unit Defense</b>	<b>Unit Survivability</b>
05-6-0003 Prepare an Engineer Annex		<b>X</b>		
05-6-0010 Establish a Command Post (CP)	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>
11-3-0214.05-T01A Establish and Operate a Single-Channel Voice Radio Net		<b>X</b>		
11-5-1102.05-T01A Install, Operate, and Maintain a Single-Channel, Ground and Airborne Radio System (SINCGARS) Frequency Hopping (FH) Net		<b>X</b>		
12-2-0321.05-T01A Maintain Company Strength		<b>X</b>		
12-2-0338.05-T01A Maintain Troop Morale and Combat Capability		<b>X</b>		<b>X</b>

**Figure 2-2. Mission to Collective Task Matrix**

## CHAPTER 3

### Mission Outlines/Training Plans

3-1. **General.** The mission outline illustrates the relationship between the missions and their support tasks. Each outline provides the trainer with a diagram of the unit mission, FTXs and/or STXs, and the collective tasks that comprise them.

3-2. **Mission Outlines.** Since unit training is mission-oriented, the mission outline shows how task training contributes to the unit ability to perform its missions. The following sample mission outlines, Tables 3-1 through 3-5, provide the commander with a visual sample of his unit missions in a format that facilitates the planning and management of training.

**Table 3-1. Sample Countermobility Mission Outline**

<b>ENGINEER PLATOON COUNTERMOBILITY</b>	
Task Number	Task Title
03-3-C201.05-T01A	Prepare for Operations Under Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical (NBC) Conditions
05-3-2019	Construct Wire Obstacles
05-3-2015	Construct a Tank Ditch
05-3-2020	Construct a Log Obstacle
05-3-3006	Establish Jobsite Security
05-3-0013	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures
07-1-1923.05-T01A	React to Indirect Fire
10-2-0319.05-T01A	Receive Airdrop Resupply
71-2-0326.05-T01A	Perform Risk Management Procedures

**Table 3-2. Sample General Engineering Mission Outline**

<b>ENGINEER COMPANY GENERAL ENGINEERING</b>	
Task Number	Task Title
05-3-5144	Conduct Dump Truck Hauling Operations
05-3-0313	Construct Revetments
05-3-5201	Construct or Repair a Bridge Abutment
05-3-5106	Install Culverts
05-3-5210	Construct or Repair a Sewerage System
05-3-5222	Construct or Repair a Steel Frame Pre-engineered Structure
05-3-5221	Construct or Repair Headwalls
05-3-5220	Construct or Repair a Wood Frame Structure
05-3-5223	Construct or Repair a Concrete Structure
05-3-5212	Construct or Repair Electrical Utilities
05-3-5211	Construct or Repair a Water Distribution System
05-3-5215	Install Coupled Pipeline
05-3-3006	Establish Jobsite Security
08-2-0314.05-T01A	Treat Unit Casualties (for Units With Medical Treatment Personnel)

**Table 3-3. Sample Mobility Mission Outline**

<b>ENGINEER PLATOON MOBILITY</b>	
<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-2-0114	Provide Engineer Support to Breaching Operations
05-3-1017	Conduct a River Crossing Site Reconnaissance
05-3-1008	Conduct Minesweeping Operations
05-2-1013	Conduct a Water Crossing Site Reconnaissance
05-3-1050	Prepare an Expedient Ford
05-3-5109	Clear Obstacles With Engineer Equipment
03-2-3008.05-T01A	Conduct a Radiological, Chemical, or Biological Reconnaissance or Survey
03-3-C208.05-T01A	Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area

**Table 3-4. Sample Perform Survivability Construction Mission Outline**

<b>ENGINEER PLATOON PERFORM SURVIVABILITY CONSTRUCTION</b>	
<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-3-3013	Construct Vehicle Fighting Positions
05-3-3014	Construct Vehicle Protective Positions
05-3-2015	Construct a Tank Ditch
05-3-3000	Construct Bunkers and Shelters

**Table 3-5. Sample Unit Survivability/Unit Defense Mission Outline**

<b>Engineer Company Unit Survivability/Unit Defense</b>	
<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
03-3-C203.05-T01A	Respond to a Chemical Attack
03-3-C205.05-T01A	Prepare for a Friendly Nuclear Strike
05-2-3002	Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment
11-5-0121.05-T01A	Provide a Field Cable or Wire System
44-1-C220.05-T01A	Use Passive Air Defense Measures
44-1-C221.05-T01A	Take Active Combined Arms Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aircraft

## CHAPTER 4

### Training Exercise

4-1. General. Training exercises are used to train and practice the performance of collective tasks. This MTP contains a sample FTX. It is designed to assist in developing, sustaining, and evaluating the unit mission proficiency. Table 4-1 lists the FTX by exercise number, title, and page number.

**Table 4-1. FTX Exercise**

Exercise Number	Exercise Title	Page
FTX 5-1-E0001	Conduct Mobility Operations	4-1

4-2. Field Training Exercise. The FTX is designed to provide a training method for the unit to train its critical wartime missions. It provides a logical sequence for the performance of the tasks previously trained in STXs.

4-3. Situational Training Exercise. STXs are short, scenario-driven, mission-oriented tactical exercises used to train a group of closely related collective tasks. STXs provide the information for training the missions that make up the critical wartime mission. STXs—

- Provide repetitive training of missions.
- Allow the training to focus on identified weaknesses.
- Allow the unit to practice the mission STX before conducting a higher-echelon FTX.
- Save time by providing most of the information needed to develop a vehicle for training.

**ENGINEER COMPANY  
FTX  
5-1-E0001  
CONDUCT MOBILITY OPERATIONS**

1. Objective. This sample exercise trains collective, leader, and individual tasks in the company operation, Conduct Mobility Operations.

2. Interface. This exercise supports the task force (TF) requirement to conduct combat operations.

3. Training Enhancers.

a. The training matrix in Chapter 2 shows the collective tasks that must be mastered to perform the company mission. Training that will improve its ability to perform its mission are—

(1) Planning, controlling, and coordinating mobility operations. Training may be conducted in garrison and/or local training areas by one of the following methods:

- (a) Classroom instruction.
- (b) A map exercise (MAPEX) combined with a sand table exercise.
- (c) A command post exercise (CPX) conducted in garrison.
- (d) A command field exercise (CFX) conducted in a field environment.

- (e) A tactical exercise without troops (TEWT).
- (f) A communications exercise (COMEX).
- (g) Simulations and games.

(2) Establishing an aggressive spirit. An aggressive spirit can be established in a unit and its leaders by engaging in the following activities:

- (a) Aggressive unit sports and physical-fitness programs.
- (b) Leader and individual confidence courses.
- (c) Appropriate training films that have a positive, aggressive effect on the Soldiers.
- (d) Awareness of the unit heritage.

b. This exercise begins with the receipt of a warning order (WARNO) and ends upon the completions of area damage control (ADC) activities. Figure 4-1 illustrates the general scenario of the exercise. Table 4-2 is a suggested scenario, and Figure 4-2 is the movement order for the scenario.

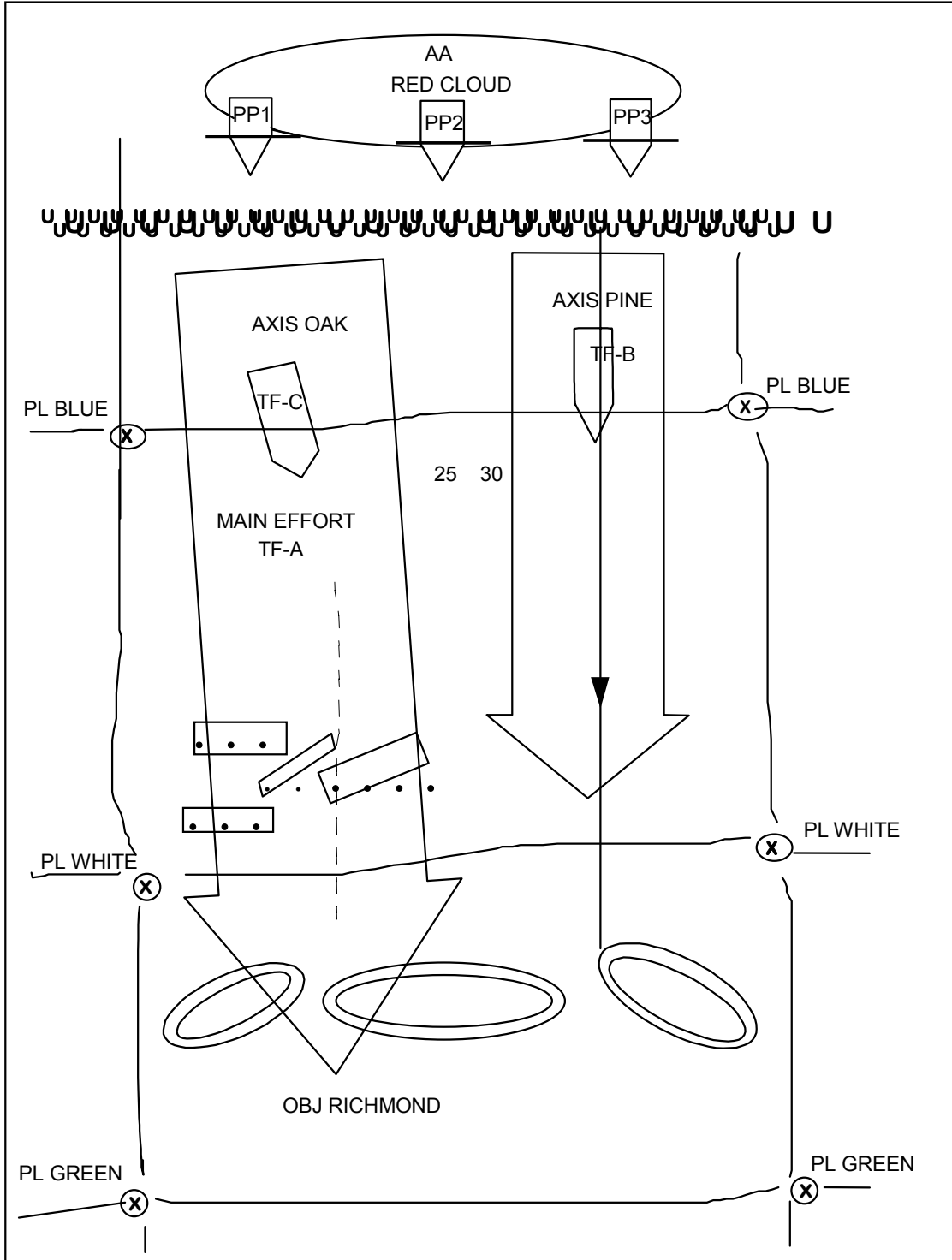


Figure 4-1. General Scenario FTX

**Table 4-2. Sample Suggested Scenario**

<b>Event</b>	<b>Action</b>	<b>Estimated Time</b>
<u>Module 1</u>		
1	Receive a Bridge WARNO	15 minutes
2	Receive a Bridge Movement Order	30 minutes
3	Plan and Issue a Movement Order	2.5 hours
4	Conduct a Tactical Road March	6 hours
5	Occupy an AA	4 hours
6	Receive a Brigade WARNO	15 minutes
7	Receive a Brigade OPORD	2 hours
8	Conduct an AAR	1 hour
<u>Module 2</u>		
9	Conduct Precombat Operations	20 hours
	Plan/Direct an Engineer Reconnaissance	8 hours
	Perform an Engineer Battlefield Assessment	4 hours
	Prepare an Engineer Estimate	3 hours
	Prepare an Engineer Annex	1 hour
10	Conduct an AAR	1 hour
<u>Module 3</u>		
11	Monitor the Conduct of the Attack, and Coordinate and issue FRAGOs, as appropriate	9.5 hours
<u>Module 4</u>		
12	Move to the AA	4 hours
13	Conduct a Final AAR	2 hours
*	Defend Against an Air Attack	
*	Control Combat Formations	
*	Prepare an OPORD	
*	Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment	
*	Manage Battlefield Stress	
*	Use Passive Air Defense Measures	
*	Perform PMCS	
*	Operate a Net Control Station	
*	Establish and Operate a Single-Channel, Voice Radio Station ENDEX	
		<b>Total time: 69 hours</b>
<b>*These tasks are integrated and evaluated throughout the exercise.</b>		



### Movement Order

1. SITUATION. Contact with the enemy has been broken. The enemy has withdrawn to vicinity NK 403087. It is being reinforced and is preparing to counterattack. The division is moving to occupy an assembly area (AA) in preparation of combat operations.
2. MISSION. The 25th Brigade moves by tactical road march via route Monroe, commencing 011600 hours to AA vicinity NK 243567. The order of march is TF A, TF B, and TF C. The interval between serials is 30 minutes. Close on the AA no later than 011900 hours.
3. EXECUTION.
  - a. Concept of Movement. TF A will be the lead element with assistance from the military police (MP) for traffic control. TF B will follow 30 minutes after TF A. Brigade HQ will follow 30 minutes after TF B. TF C will follow 30 minutes after brigade HQ.
  - b. Tasks to Subordinate Units. The MPs will provide traffic control for the brigade movement.
  - c. Detailed Timings. None.
  - d. Coordinating Instructions.
    - (1) Start point (SP) NK 243567 at 011600 hours.
    - (2) Route Monroe command post (CP) is at NK 248560.
    - (3) Quarters party is the 25th Battalion.
    - (4) Vehicle markings are according to the unit SOP.
    - (5) Additional information, as required.
4. SERVICE SUPPORT. Per the unit SOP.
5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL.
  - a. Command.
  - b. Signal.
    - (1) Current signal operation instructions (SOI) are in effect.
    - (2) Visual signals according to the unit SOP.

**Figure 4-2. Movement Order**

4. General Situation.
  - a. Contact with the enemy has been broken. The enemy has withdrawn deep to the rear, is being reinforced, and is preparing to counterattack within 24 hours. The enemy is expected to use nonpersistent nerve agents. Enemy air is expected to be active in the area. The latest intelligence summary (INTSUM)

indicates that the enemy may have a company-sized strong point in the brigade sector. Enemy units occupying the combat outpost are half strength. Counterattacking forces are expected to be full strength.

b. This exercise is conducted under all environments during both day and night operations. The company is operating in an arid environment. The company will operate under threat of NBC attacks, ground or air attacks, indirect fire, and electronic warfare (EW).

c. This exercise is conducted under Threat Level I, II, or III attacks.

d. The company should be prepared to relocate at least every three to four days.

e. The unit should be prepared to move by echelons while continuing to provide support to the assigned area.

#### 5. Special Situation.

a. The lead TF encounters an unexpected obstacle that prevents bypass. Enemy contact has been made. The brigade commander gives the following fragmentary order (FRAGO):

“TF, conduct breaching operations and continue the attack.”

b. After completing the breaches, the TF receives fire from an enemy position and encounters complex obstacles that prevent bypass. The attack is stalled. The unit is ordered to move in.

#### 6. Support Requirements.

a. Minimum Trainers and Observers/Controllers. The battalion commander or the Operations and Training Officer (U.S. Army) (S3) who will be the trainer and the primary evaluator can conduct this task. At least one other observer/controller (O/C) is required for each engineer platoon and OPFOR platoon involved in this FTX.

##### b. Opposing Forces.

(1) OPFOR are required for the exercise to simulate Threat Level II and III activities.

(2) OPFOR should have specific missions and be controlled whenever used.

(3) The Multiple Integrated Laser Engagement System (MILES) can be used, or the trainer and O/C can assess the damage to equipment and personnel casualties.

c. Vehicles and Communications. Vehicles and communications equipment organic to the unit are used. Each trainer and O/C needs a vehicle and a radio. Radios are also required for OPFOR vehicles during mounted operations.

d. Maneuver Area. Depending on the local training area, an area with a minimum dimension of 15 x 6 kilometers for the hasty attack is desirable. The terrain should offer multiple covered and concealed approaches to the objective area. Using terrain that limits the leader to a geographical or school solution does not allow an evaluation of the unit ability to conduct a terrain analysis and to select an appropriate course of action.

e. Consolidated Support Requirements. Company support requirements can be calculated by adding the total of the requirements for each participating subordinate element. See Table 4-3.

**Table 4-3. Consolidated Support Requirements for FTX 5-1-E0001**

<b>Ammunition</b>	<b>DODIC</b>	<b>Estimated Basic Load</b>	
5.56 mm	A080	150 rounds per rifle	
7.62 mm	A111	400 rounds per M60	
5.56 mm	A075	250 rounds per SAW	
Caliber .50	A598	250 rounds per M2	
ATWESS (AT-4)	L367	15 each per company (inert)	
Hand grenade, body, M69	G811	2 per man	
Hand grenade, fuse (practice)	G878	2 per man	
Simulators, projectile, ground burst	L598	50 per exercise	
Simulator, hand grenade, M116 series	L601	20 per squad (without live demolitions to simulate demolitions) or 6 per squad	
<b>Demolitions (See the note below.)</b>			
MICLIC		4 per company with 2 reloads	
Bangalore torpedo kit		1 per squad	
Charge, block TNT		50 per squad	
MDI M11, 12, 13, 14		15 each (total 60) per platoon	
MDI igniters		60 per platoon	
Time fuse		500 feet per platoon	
Satchel charge, M183		30 per platoon	
40-pound shape charge		12 per platoon	
Smoke grenades, white		60 per platoon	
Smoke pot, ground		10 per platoon	
Mines			
<b>Other Items</b>			
Batteries, BA 200 (6-volt)		50 each	
Batteries, BA 3090 (9-volt)		400 each	
<b>Class IV</b>			
Concertina wire			
Pickets		00	
Staples			
Barbed wire			
<b>MILES Equipment</b>	<b>Company</b>	<b>Evaluators</b>	<b>OPFOR</b>
APC	13		13/4
Caliber .50 system	15		13/4
M240 system	2		
M19 blank firing adapter	15		13/4
M16 system	120		120/28
M60 machine gun system	13		13/2
Controller guns		8	
Small arms alignment fixture		2	
<b>NOTE: Ammunition and demolitions are basic loads and should be restocked (according to use) during the FTX.</b>			

7. Training and Evaluation Outline Sequence. Table 4-4 lists T&EOs that are used to evaluate the FTX.

**Table 4-4. T&EOs Used in Evaluating FTX 5-1-E0001**

<b>Task Title</b>	<b>Task Number</b>
Disseminate Combat Information and Intelligence (Battalion)	34-1-2005.05-T01A
Maintain Operations Security	71-2-0332.05-T01A
Prepare an Obstacle Plan	05-1-2000
Control a Hasty Gap Crossing	05-1-0024
Plan Breaching Operations	05-1-1001
Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment	05-2-3002
Prepare for a Chemical Attack	03-3-C202.05-T01A
Process Personnel and Administrative Actions	12-1-0406.05-T01A
Conduct Unit Level Maintenance Operations	43-2-0001.05-T01A
Treat Casualties	08-2-0003.05-T01A
Perform Field-Sanitation Measures	08-2-R315.05-T01A
Transport Casualties	08-2-C316.05-T01A
Provide Food-Service Support	10-2-0317.05-T01A
Provide Company Supply Support	10-2-0320.05-T01A
Process Personnel and Administrative Action	12-1-0406.05-T01A
Prepare an Engineer Annex	05-6-0003
Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD)	05-1-0081
Perform an Engineer Battlefield Assessment	05-1-0027
Report Obstacle Information	05-2-0015
Report Engineer Information	05-1-0026
Analyze Battlefield Information	05-1-7010
Control Combined Arms Breaching	05-1-0048
Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures	05-3-0013
Establish and Operate a Single-Channel Voice Radio Net	11-3-0214.05-T01A
Operate a Telephone Switch (Manual/SB22/PT)	11-5-0050.05-T01A
Install, Operate, and Maintain a Single-Channel, Ground and Airborne Radio System (SINCGARS) Frequency Hopping (FH) Net	11-5-1102.05-T01A
Conduct Battlefield Stress Reduction and Stress Prevention Procedures	08-2-R303.05-T01A
Report Casualties	12-1-0403.05-T01A
Conduct Replacement Operations	12-1-0405.05-T01A

## CHAPTER 5

### Training and Evaluation Outlines

The T&EOs for the unit are listed in Figure 5-1. The mission-to-collective task matrix in Chapter 2 lists the T&EOs required to train the critical wartime missions according to their specific BOS.

<b>Develop Intelligence</b>	
Plan and Direct Engineer Intelligence Collection (05-1-0023).....	5-3
Identify Geospatial Support Requirements (05-1-6000).....	5-6
Perform an Engineer Battlefield Assessment (Company) (05-2-0027).....	5-8
Process Captured Documents and Equipment (19-3-3105.05-T01A).....	5-10
Maintain Operations Security (OPSEC) (71-2-0332.05-T01A).....	5-12
<b>Deploy/Conduct Maneuver</b>	
Reorganize as Infantry (05-1-0011).....	5-15
Fight as Infantry (05-1-0015).....	5-17
Prepare an Obstacle Plan (05-1-2000).....	5-23
Report Obstacle Information (05-2-0015).....	5-27
Provide Engineer Support to Breaching Operations (05-2-0114).....	5-29
Support a Water Crossing Operation (05-2-1004).....	5-33
Conduct Enemy or Unobserved Minefield Clearing Operations (05-2-1005).....	5-37
Conduct Quartering Party Operations (05-2-3007).....	5-40
React to Indirect Fire (07-1-1923.05-T01A).....	5-43
Conduct Passage of Lines (Passing/Stationary) (07-2-1125.05-T01A).....	5-45
Occupy an Assembly Area (AA) (07-2-1136.05-T02A).....	5-50
Conduct a Convoy (07-2-1301.05-T01A).....	5-53
Conduct a Tactical Road March (07-3-1123.05-T01A).....	5-57
Conduct Actions at Danger Areas (07-3-1135.05-T01A).....	5-60
Move Tactically (07-3-C211.05-T01A).....	5-62
<b>Protect the Force</b>	
Conduct a Radiological, Chemical, or Biological Reconnaissance or Survey (03-2-3008.05-T01A).....	5-65
Prepare for Operations Under Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical (NBC) Conditions (03-3-C201.05-T01A).....	5-68
Prepare for a Chemical Attack (03-3-C202.05-T01A).....	5-70
Respond to a Chemical Attack (03-3-C203.05-T01A).....	5-72
Prepare for a Friendly Nuclear Strike (03-3-C205.05-T01A).....	5-74
Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (03-3-C206.05-T01A).....	5-76
Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area (03-3-C208.05-T01A).....	5-78
React to Smoke Operations (03-3-C209.05-T01A).....	5-80
Respond to the Residual Effects of a Nuclear Attack (03-3-C222.05-T01A).....	5-82
Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (03-3-C223.05-T01A).....	5-84
Conduct Operational Decontamination (03-3-C224.05-T01A).....	5-86
Cross a Chemically Contaminated Area (03-3-C226.05-T01A).....	5-90
Direct Survivability Construction (05-1-3001).....	5-92
Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment (05-2-3002).....	5-94
Defend a Convoy Against a Ground Attack (05-2-3003).....	5-97
Conduct an Extraction From a Minefield (05-2-3005).....	5-100
Emplace a Hasty Protective Row Minefield (05-2-3008).....	5-103
Construct Bunkers and Shelters (05-3-3000).....	5-108
Remove a Hasty Protective Row Minefield (05-3-3007).....	5-111
Construct Vehicle Fighting Positions (05-3-3013).....	5-114
Construct Vehicle Protective Positions (05-3-3014).....	5-117
Disable Critical Equipment and Material (05-3-7005).....	5-120

Prepare Crew-Served Weapons Fighting Positions (05-5-3009) .....	5-122
Establish a Company Defensive Position (07-2-0414.05-T01A) .....	5-125
React to an Ambush (07-3-1112.05-T01A).....	5-129
React to Unexploded Ordnance (UXO) (09-2-0337.05-T01A) .....	5-131
Employ Physical Security Measures (19-3-2204.05-T01A).....	5-133
Use Passive Air Defense Measures (44-1-C220.05-T01A).....	5-135
Take Active Combined Arms Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (44-1-C221.05-T01A) .....	5-137
Perform Risk Management Procedures (71-2-0326.05-T01A).....	5-140
<b>Perform CSS and Sustainment</b>	
Coordinate for Medical Services (05-2-0050).....	5-142
Coordinate for Food Service Support (05-2-0051) .....	5-144
Coordinate the Location of Class IV and Class V Supply Points (05-2-0080).....	5-146
Repair Airfields (05-2-0702).....	5-148
Plan/Direct Aerial Logistics Operations (05-2-1054) .....	5-151
Coordinate for Organizational Maintenance Support (05-2-1126) .....	5-154
Conduct Combat Refueling Operations (05-2-7000).....	5-156
Receive and Distribute Throughput Supplies (05-2-7003) .....	5-158
Provide Opposing Forces (OPFOR) Support to Training Exercises (05-2-9001).....	5-160
Construct an Expedient Landing Zone (LZ) for Helicopters (05-3-1010) .....	5-176
Transport Casualties (for Units Without Medical Treatment Personnel) (08-2-C316.05-T01A).....	5-178
Conduct Battlefield Stress Reduction and Stress Prevention Procedures (08-2-R303.05-T01A) .....	5-181
Perform Field Sanitation Functions (08-2-R315.05-T01A) .....	5-184
Perform Unit Graves Registration (GRREG) Operations (10-2-0318.05-T01A).....	5-187
Receive Airdrop Resupply (10-2-0319.05-T01A) .....	5-189
Provide Company Supply Support (10-2-0320.05-T01A).....	5-191
Operate a Telephone Switch (Manual/SB22/PT) (11-5-0050.05-T01A).....	5-193
Provide a Field Cable or Wire System (11-5-0121.05-T01A).....	5-195
Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (EPWs) (19-3-3106.05-T01A) .....	5-198
Conduct Unit Level Maintenance Operations (43-2-0001.05-T01A) .....	5-200
Receive External Sling Load Resupply (55-2-0325.05-T01A).....	5-208
<b>Exercise Command and Control</b>	
Integrate Augmentation Support (05-1-0017).....	5-211
Plan and Control Tactical Obstacles (05-2-2013).....	5-213
Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon) (05-2-7008) .....	5-216
Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures (05-3-0013).....	5-221
Integrate Engineer Elements Into the Maneuver Element (05-3-0300).....	5-225
Prepare an Engineer Estimate (05-6-0002).....	5-227
Prepare an Engineer Annex (05-6-0003).....	5-230
Establish a Command Post (CP) (05-6-0010).....	5-232
Establish and Operate a Single-Channel Voice Radio Net (11-3-0214.05-T01A).....	5-234
Install, Operate, and Maintain a Single-Channel, Ground and Airborne Radio System (SINCGARS) Frequency Hopping (FH) Net (11-5-1102.05-T01A).....	5-237
Maintain Company Strength (12-2-0321.05-T01A) .....	5-241
Maintain Troop Morale and Combat Capability (12-2-0338.05-T01A) .....	5-243

Figure 5-1. List of T&EOs

**ELEMENTS:** Company  
 Company Headquarters  
 Three Engineer Platoon Headquarters

**TASK:** Plan and Direct Engineer Intelligence Collection (05-1-0023)  
 (FM 5-170) (FM 20-32) (FM 3-34)  
 (FM 3-34.2) (FM 34-5) (FM 4-01.41)  
 (FM 5-34) (FM 5-410) (FM 5-430-00-1)  
 (FM 5-430-00-2) (FM 5-480)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The engineer battalion command and control (C2) is providing support to a maneuver task force (TF) or a brigade combat team (BCT). The element determines the priority intelligence requirements (PIR) based on the commanders requirements and intent. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The Intelligence Officer (U.S. Army) (S2) and the Operations and Training Officer (U.S. Army) (S3) develops and implements an engineer intelligence collection plan to gather the essential elements of information (EEI) for subordinate and supporting elements to successfully accomplish the mission. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The S2 and S3 develop the intelligence collection plan.</p> <p><b>NOTE: The digital elements can perform intelligence gathering and reconnaissance through the Army Battle Command System (ABCS), All-Source Analysis System (ASAS), and Digital Terrain Support System (DTSS). Orders and reports can be sent via frequency-modulated (FM) or digital systems according to the unit standing operating procedures (SOP).</b></p> <p>a. Determined the PIR.</p> <p><b>NOTE: This is in the form of a question normally, but it may be a statement.</b></p> <p>b. Prepared the EEI to answer the PIR. The EEI included, but was not limited to—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Friendly engineer capabilities.</li> <li>(2) Enemy engineer capabilities.</li> <li>(3) Enemy conventional and scatterable-minefield locations.</li> <li>(4) Terrain.</li> <li>(5) Waterways and drainage.</li> <li>(6) Ports and harbors.</li> <li>(7) Roads, including military load classification (MLC).</li> <li>(8) Railways.</li> <li>(9) Trafficability.</li> <li>(10) Airfields.</li> <li>(11) Natural and man-made obstacles.</li> <li>(12) Contaminated areas.</li> <li>(13) Built-up areas.</li> <li>(14) Engineer resources.</li> <li>(15) Electricity; gas; water; and petroleum, oils, and lubricants (POL).</li> </ul> <p>c. Identified units to collect the information.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Used maneuver units by placing the PIR and EEI in the maneuver operation order (OPORD).</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(2) Used engineer elements by placing the PIR and EEI in the engineer OPORD.</p> <p>* 2. The S2 and S3 implement a collection plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Directed engineer companies to perform specific reconnaissance.</li> <li>b. Briefed reconnaissance personnel on—               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) The reconnaissance objectives.</li> <li>(2) The area or route to reconnoiter.</li> <li>(3) The suggested method of reconnaissance.</li> <li>(4) Any additional guidance from the commander (such as specific items to look for in an area).</li> </ul> </li> <li>c. Provided elements with forms and materials for the reconnaissance.</li> <li>d. Consolidated the information.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Engineer companies forwarded the reconnaissance reports to the S2.</li> <li>(2) Maneuver units forwarded the intelligence reports (INTREPs) answering the PIR through the Assistant Chief of Staff, G2 (Intelligence) (G2) brigade S2 to the engineer S2.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: The S2 and S3 collate and summarize reconnaissance and INTREPs.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>e. Maintained the following files:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) An intelligence log recording all incoming and outgoing communications.</li> <li>(2) Engineer reconnaissance reports.</li> <li>(3) An intelligence summary (INTSUM) and an INTREP.</li> <li>(4) Engineer resource reports.</li> <li>(5) Minefield records.</li> <li>(6) Scatterable-minefield reports.</li> <li>(7) Obstacle reports.</li> </ul> </li> <li>f. Developed intelligence by extracting information pertinent to the PIR and EEI from the reconnaissance and INTREPs.</li> </ul> <p>* 3. The S2 and S3 complete or update the situation analysis of the engineer estimate.</p> <p>* 4. The S2 and S3 disseminate the intelligence to engineer, maneuver, combat support (CS), and combat service support (CSS) elements.</p> <p><b>NOTE: The digital units submit intelligence information to higher headquarters (HQ) through the ABCS.</b></p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**



**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
Regimental Engineer Section

**TASK:** Identify Geospatial Support Requirements (05-1-6000)  
(FM 34-130) (FM 34-2) (FM 34-3)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The staff section is providing support to a maneuver task. Topographic support requirements are identified. The staff oversees the development and implementation of an engineer intelligence collection plan. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The staff identifies the need for standard and nonstandard geospatial support products that will support the intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB) process. It satisfies questions raised in the priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and completes the intelligence annex to the operation order (OPORD) or the operation plan (OPLAN) in the time outlined in the commander's guidance. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>1. The staff identifies the commander's intelligence requirements.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Received the commander's planning guidance and concept of operations after receiving the mission from higher headquarters (HQ).</li> <li>b. Developed and prioritized the essential elements of information (EEI) and PIR.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Developed the PIR in the form of a question or statement.</li> <li>(2) Prepared the EEI to answer the PIR. The EEI included, but was not limited to,—                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Friendly engineer capabilities.</li> <li>(b) Enemy engineer capabilities.</li> <li>(c) Enemy conventional and scatterable-minefield locations.</li> <li>(d) Contaminated areas.</li> <li>(e) Engineer resources.</li> <li>(f) Electricity, gas, water, petroleum, oils, and lubricant (POL) resources.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: The following products are provided by the topographic element: terrain, waterways or drainage, ports and harbors, roads (including military load classification [MLC]), railroads, trafficability, airfields, natural and man-made obstacles, and built-up areas.</b></p> <p>2. The staff develops a collection plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined the PIR.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Reviewed the commander's guidance and intent.</li> <li>(2) Considered the current situation.</li> <li>(3) Considered the mission.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Identified the EEI needed to answer the PIR.</li> <li>c. Implemented the collection strategy.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Assessed the current database.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: Digital units request Digital Topographic Support System (DTSS) products using digital capabilities according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Reviewed the maps, charts, and imagery.</li> </ul>		

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO-GO</b>
( b) Checked the analysis, reports, and IPB products. (2) Requested products that answered the PIR questions and fulfilled the mission directives and the commander's intent in order to fill gaps in the database.		

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-1-2000	Prepare an Obstacle Plan
05-1-6001	Request a Standard Geospatial Product
05-2-1004	Support a Water Crossing Operation
05-2-1025	Provide Support for Mobility Operations
05-2-2013	Plan and Control Tactical Obstacles
05-2-3000	Control Construction of Survivability Positions

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** Company Headquarters

**TASK:** Perform an Engineer Battlefield Assessment (Company) (05-2-0027)  
(FM 3-34)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is supporting a task force (TF). They receive an order or a summary from the supported unit's Intelligence Officer (U.S. Army) (S2). Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element commander continuously has an accurate and timely battlefield assessment of the area of operations (AO). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element commander, aided by the element staff, determines the characteristics of the AO and the impact on engineer options.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Analyzed the weather for precipitation and temperature for the—               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Trafficability impact on enemy and friendly combat vehicles.</li> <li>(2) Water obstacle depth, flow rate, and bank conditions.</li> <li>(3) Ability to dig positions and tank ditches.</li> <li>(4) Visibility conditions (such as fog) that impact the positioning of obstacles.</li> <li>(5) Capability of engineer vehicles to maneuver in limited visibility and keep pace with the maneuver unit's fighting vehicles.</li> <li>(6) Employment of conventional and scatterable mines in extreme weather conditions.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Analyzed the terrain.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Observation or fields of fire.                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Analyzed the impact on obstacle placement (both friendly and enemy).</li> <li>(b) Analyzed items, buildings, and vegetation that needed to be cleared to improve observation.</li> </ul> </li> <li>(2) Cover and concealment.                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Identified concealed locations for engineer equipment and materials (especially during breaching and river crossing operations).</li> <li>(b) Identified possible combat trails offering cover and concealment from enemy ground, air, and satellite surveillance.</li> </ul> </li> <li>(3) Obstacles.                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Identified existing, natural, and man-made obstacles and the impact on maneuver, avenues of approach, and the placement of reinforcing obstacles.</li> <li>(b) Evaluated the obstacles with respect to friendly and enemy maneuver and the type of unit.</li> </ul> </li> <li>(4) Key or decisive terrain. Determined potential engineer tasks needed to facilitate friendly control or deny enemy control.</li> <li>(5) Avenues of approach.                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Identified friendly and enemy mobility corridors and avenues of approach based upon the unit.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>( b) Evaluated engineer actions to enhance or hinder movement on these avenues of approach.</p> <p>c. Analyzed other characteristics important to the engineer plan.</p> <p>* 2. The element commander working with the supported unit S2, the engineer battalion S2, and the assistant division engineer develops the enemy situation and provides input on the engineer capability of the enemy.</p> <p>a. Estimated the strength of the enemy engineer units, including any information (confirmed, suspected, or based on doctrinal techniques) concerning reinforcement to organic enemy engineers from higher enemy echelons.</p> <p>b. Determined the location of the enemy engineer units and other units having engineer-related capability, including helicopters and artillery units with remotely delivered mine capability.</p> <p>c. Assessed enemy capabilities for breaching, gap crossing, obstacle emplacement, survivability, and emplacing remotely delivered mines (from aircraft or artillery).</p> <p>d. Evaluated recent and present significant activities, including engineer battlefield tactics and techniques, to identify weaknesses and strengths.</p> <p>e. Predicted the possible and most likely courses of action (COAs) on the enemy and the impact of the COA on the enemy engineer situation.</p> <p>* 3. The element commander develops a situational template of the enemy engineer operations.</p> <p>a. Stated probable levels of support and the engineer plan of the enemy.</p> <p>b. Incorporated weather and terrain data.</p> <p>c. Developed an overlay of anticipated enemy obstacles, fortifications, and other significant engineer activities of the enemy.</p> <p>* 4. The element commander incorporates the situational template into the staff estimate of the supported unit commander. Incorporated the—</p> <p>a. Engineer staff estimate</p> <p>b. Engineer annex</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-0014	Conduct Engineer Intelligence Collection
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Three Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Nine Engineer Squads  
 Company Headquarters Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Equipment Sections  
 Maintenance Section  
 Company Headquarters  
 Obstacle Section  
 Equipment Section  
 Unit Maintenance Section  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Three Assault and Obstacle Sections  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads

**TASK:** Process Captured Documents and Equipment (19-3-3105.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-19.40)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The enemy equipment and documents are captured. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element processes all captured equipment and documents based on disposition instructions and within the time standards established by higher headquarters (HQ). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The element tags all captured equipment and documents. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Described the type of equipment and documents, such as maps, photos, rifles, and radios.</li> <li>b. Annotated the date and time of the capture.</li> <li>c. Provided the place (grid coordinates) of the capture.</li> <li>d. Noted the capturing unit.</li> <li>e. Furnished the circumstances of the capture.</li> <li>f. Identified the prisoner's name on the tag if the items were taken from enemy prisoners of war (EPWs).</li> </ul> * 2. The element leader reports the capture of equipment and documents to higher HQ. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Described the type of equipment and documents.</li> <li>b. Stated the date and time of the capture.</li> <li>c. Identified the capturing unit.</li> <li>d. Furnished the place (grid coordinates) of the capture.</li> </ul> * 3. The element leader disposes of the equipment and documents according to the guidance received from higher HQ. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Destroyed, secured, evacuated, or abandoned the equipment.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Evacuated the documents through the chain of command to intelligence personnel.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-0018	Conduct Report Procedures

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Three Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Nine Engineer Squads  
 Company Headquarters Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Equipment Sections  
 Maintenance Section  
 Brigade Engineer Section  
 Obstacle Section  
 Equipment Section  
 Unit Maintenance Section  
 Equipment Platoon  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Three Assault and Obstacle Sections  
 Regimental Engineer Section  
 Combat Medic Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads

**TASK:** Maintain Operations Security (OPSEC) (71-2-0332.05-T01A)  
 (AR 530-1) (AR 380-5) (FM 24-33)  
 (FM 24-35) (FM 3-19.30) (FM 34-60)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is operating where the enemy can detect it. The enemy can employ electronic-warfare (EW) measures and air and ground reconnaissance elements. The element can also use the local populace and enemy intelligence agencies. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element prevents the enemy from learning its strength, dispositions, intentions, and any essential elements of friendly information (EEFI) or from surprising the element main body. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. Leaders check or perform information security measures. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Disseminated the information on a need-to-know basis.</li> <li>b. Prohibited fraternization with civilians.</li> <li>c. Conducted alerts, deployment preparations, and loading operations to minimize detection.</li> <li>d. Ensured that maps contained only the minimum-essential information.</li> <li>e. Conducted inspections and gave briefings to ensure that personnel did not carry any details of military activities in their personal materials, such as letters, diaries, notes, drawings, sketches, or photographs.</li> <li>f. Sanitized all planning areas and positions before departure.</li> </ul>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>2. The element performs camouflage discipline.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Concealed and camouflaged with natural materials, whenever possible, to prevent ground or air observation.</li> <li>b. Moved on covered and concealed routes.</li> <li>c. Covered all reflective surfaces and unit markings with nonreflective material, such as cloth, mud, or a camouflage stick.</li> <li>d. Covered or removed all vehicle markings.</li> </ul> <p>3. The element camouflages individual positions and equipment to prevent detection from 35 meters or greater and camouflages vehicles to prevent detection from 100 meters or greater.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the foliage was not stripped near the unit position.</li> <li>b. Camouflaged earth berms.</li> <li>c. Ensured that camouflage nets were erected.</li> <li>d. Evaded crossing near footpaths, trails, and roads.</li> <li>e. Erased any tracks leading into the positions.</li> <li>f. Ensured that the vehicles parked in the shadows were moved as the shadows shifted.</li> <li>g. Replaced and replenished the camouflage.</li> <li>h. Evaded movement in the area to prevent ground and air detection.</li> </ul> <p>4. The element employs the company net control station (NCS) and enforces communications security (COMSEC).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Enforced signal operation instructions (SOI) and signal supplemental instructions (SSI) procedures, such as challenges, authentications decoding, call signs, and frequencies.</li> <li>b. Ensured that the monitored traffic did not reveal information to the enemy.</li> <li>c. Employed approved radiotelephone operator (RATELO) procedures.</li> <li>d. Followed COMSEC procedures, such as keeping transmissions short, using the lowest possible power settings, using directional antennas, changing transmission patterns, and maintaining radio silence.</li> <li>e. Followed procedures for operations during jamming.</li> <li>f. Made maximum use of the messenger and wire service.</li> <li>g. Used visual signals according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).</li> </ul> <p>5. The element employs physical security measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Employed observation posts (OPs).</li> <li>b. Employed counterreconnaissance patrols.</li> <li>c. Followed stand-to procedures.</li> <li>d. Employed mines and obstacles, when permitted.</li> <li>e. Tied in with adjacent units for coordination and fire.</li> <li>f. Used the challenge and password.</li> <li>g. Limited access into the area of the unit.</li> <li>h. Safeguarded weapons, ammunition, sensitive items, and classified documents.</li> <li>i. Picked up litter.</li> <li>j. Employed air guards.</li> </ul> <p>* 6. All leaders enforce noise and light discipline.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-3002	Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment
05-2-3008	Emplace a Hasty Protective Row Minefield
05-3-3007	Remove a Hasty Protective Row Minefield

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Company Headquarters Section  
 Brigade Engineer Section  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads

**TASK:** Reorganize as Infantry (05-1-0011)  
 (FM 7-10) (FM 3-21.71) (FM 7-8)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The engineer command and control (C2) commander directs subordinate engineer elements to reorganize as infantry. A time schedule is provided in an operations order (OPORD). This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** A subordinate element reorganizes into combat trains and combat elements. The element is prepared to conduct infantry operations within the specified time requirements.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element commander initiates a reorganization.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Issued a warning order (WARNO) and conducted troop-leading procedures.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Developed a tentative plan based on the mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC), while the subordinate units prepared for infantry operations.</li> <li>(2) Conducted a reconnaissance in order to complete the plan.</li> <li>(3) Issued the completed order, verbally, in a fragmentary order (FRAGO) or an OPORD format.</li> <li>(4) Conducted the appropriate equipment and troop inspections.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Evaluated the status of the ongoing engineer missions and issued instructions for the termination of those missions.</li> <li>c. Organized the company into two elements (combat and combat trains), designated the composition of each element, and determined the assembly location and time for each element.</li> <li>d. Assigned C2 responsibilities for each combat element.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. The element commander organizes the combat elements.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Retained the existing organizational structure of the engineer platoon as the basic fighting element.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: Elements are configured internally according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Coordinated with battalion personnel for augmentation from maneuver and fire support elements.</li> <li>c. Coordinated with the augmentation forces, prepared plans to incorporate them into the combat element, and determined their missions.</li> <li>d. Coordinated the command and support relationships and the combat service support (CSS) requirements and procedures.</li> <li>e. Assembled the combat element in the required configuration, at the correct location, and within the designated time.</li> </ul> <p>* 3. The element commander organizes the combat trains element.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated with the battalion C2 for augmentation from combat support elements.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Coordinated with the augmentation forces, prepared plans, incorporated them into the combat trains, and determined the— (1) Missions of the augmentation forces. (2) C2 procedures. (3) CSS requirements and procedures. (4) Requirements for additional Class V supplies required for organic weapons and augmenting mortars, including antitank systems. c. Set up material storage areas containing vehicle turnaround areas and camouflaged the areas according to the tactical situation. d. Determined the disposition of engineer equipment and operators. e. Assembled combat trains elements in the required configuration, at the correct location, and within the time designated by the commander.  * 4. The element commander designates the composition of combat and combat trains elements.  * 5. The element commander reports that the unit is prepared to receive infantry missions.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
052-901-9101	Conduct Troop Leading Procedures at the Company/ Team Level

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-0015	Fight as Infantry
05-1-0017	Integrate Augmentation Support
05-2-0018	Conduct Report Procedures
05-2-0080	Coordinate the Location of Class IV and Class V Supply Points
05-2-0100	Coordinate the Synchronization and Integration of Fire Support (FS)
05-2-3002	Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Three Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Nine Engineer Squads  
 Company Headquarters Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Equipment Sections  
 Brigade Engineer Section  
 Obstacle Section  
 Equipment Section  
 Equipment Platoon  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Three Assault and Obstacle Sections  
 Two Engineer Platoons

**TASK:** Fight as Infantry (05-1-0015)  
 (FM 7-10) (FM 7-7) (FM 7-8)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** An element has received an operation order (OPORD) to reorganize as infantry and is preparing to engage in combat operations. The element turns in and draws necessary equipment to conduct infantry operations. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element command and control (C2) organizes the subordinate elements for combat and conducts defensive or retrograde operations according to higher headquarters (HQ) directives. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader conducts troop-leading procedures after receiving the OPORD to fight as infantry.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Analyzed the mission and planned the use of any available time following the one-third, two-thirds time rule.</li> <li>b. Issued a warning order (WARNO) and ensured that all of the subordinate leaders were kept informed of their duties.</li> <li>c. Consulted with the subordinate leaders and made tentative plans.</li> <li>d. Initiated the necessary movement to prepare the subordinate units for the upcoming mission and to incorporate them into the upcoming mission.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: The element leader uses fragmentary orders (FRAGOs) to initiate these actions.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>e. Reconnoitered the area of operations (AO).</li> <li>f. Incorporated any additional details concerning the operation (following a reconnaissance mission) and completed the plan.</li> <li>g. Supervised the preparation and execution of the mission.</li> <li>h. Issued the order for the mission in verbal or written form.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. The element leader orders the company to conduct defensive operations.</p> <p>* 3. The element leader posts security elements to provide local security.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>4. The element identifies factors of the mission.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified the key terrain.</li> <li>b. Identified the likely avenue of approach.</li> <li>c. Identified the location of the company battle position (BP), the company target reference points (TRPs), and the engagement area (EA).</li> <li>d. Determined the limits of the company BP and the company or team sectors of fire.</li> <li>e. Determined the artillery preplotted targets.</li> <li>f. Determined the primary and supplementary firing positions that—               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Enabled the element to deliver effective fire on TRPs and EAs at optimal ranges.</li> <li>(2) Provided long-range observation and interlocking fire between the adjacent units.</li> <li>(3) Provided a line of sight to other elements or team BPs to provide mutually supporting fire.</li> <li>(4) Provided cover and concealment.</li> </ul> </li> <li>g. Covered and concealed the routes between the primary and supplementary firing positions.</li> <li>h. Covered and concealed the routes into and out of the primary BP to subsequent BPs.</li> <li>i. Identified the locations of observation posts (OPs) to provide observation of the platoon-sized elements sector of fire.</li> <li>j. Identified the location of existing obstacles and the positions for reinforcing the obstacles.</li> </ul> <p>* 5. The element leader develops a rough draft of a fire plan.</p> <p>* 6. The element leader returns to the assembly area (AA) or moves the company C2 to the rear of the BP, meets with the subordinate leaders, and issues an OPORD.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Issued an OPORD for occupying the BP using the rough draft of the fire plan or a terrain model as a guide (in the AA).</li> <li>b. Issued an OPORD for occupying the BP from a vantage point using the rough draft of the fire plan as a guide (in the BP).</li> </ul> <p>7. The element moves to the rear and flanks of the assigned BP.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Moved to a hidden position at the rear of the BP and executed actions at the halt.</li> <li>b. Manned the OPs of the company.</li> </ul> <p>* 8. The element leader issues a five-paragraph oral OPORD from a vantage point using the rough sketch of the fire plan.</p> <p>* 9. The element leaders return to their units and use hand-and-arm signals to have the drivers start their engines.</p> <p>*10. The element leader issues orders for occupying the BP.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ordered the platoon leader to position the vehicles, without leaving tracks, in fighting positions that were difficult for the enemy to detect.</li> <li>b. Checked the consolidated range cards and the platoon fire plan sketches to ensure that there were no weak points between the platoon or the flank companies.</li> <li>c. Finalized the fire plan in relation to the terrain to ensure that the EA was set on the enemy avenue of approach and covered by mutual-supporting, interlocking fire from platoons and located between flank companies.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. Coordinated with the flank companies to ensure that they were covered.</p> <p>e. Forwarded the company fire plan to the brigade combat team (BCT) commander for a final check of mutual-supporting, interlocking fire that covers the EA.</p> <p>f. Received reports from the platoon leaders regarding established platoon BPs and reported the information to higher HQ.</p> <p><b>NOTE: The reports are submitted within the defend-by time stated in the OPORD. The defend-by time is a calculated estimate of when the enemy may attack. The enemy may attack before or after this time.</b></p> <p>g. Ordered the platoons to continue to improve their BP.</p> <p>h. Referred to the mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) factors.</p> <p><b>NOTE: Do the most critical tasks first in case the enemy attacks before the defend-by time.</b></p> <p>*11. The element leader performs tactical planning based on the METT-TC factors and plans for a deliberate or hasty occupation of a BP in a built-up area.</p> <p>a. Conducted a reconnaissance of the BP and analyzed the threat force method of attacking a built-up area.</p> <p>b. Analyzed the BP and identified the following:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) The location of the checkpoints, phase lines, and building numbers according to the OPORD or FRAGO.</li> <li>(2) The observation sites and fields of fire on the enemy avenue of approach.</li> <li>(3) The primary, alternate, and supplementary firing positions on the perimeter of the built-up area.</li> <li>(4) The positions that would provide cover and concealment.</li> <li>(5) The location of the OPs that would provide 360° security for a three-dimensional battlefield.</li> <li>(6) The covered and concealed routes into and out of the firing positions and the BPs that could not be blocked by a blowdown from structures.</li> <li>(7) The location of obstacles (existing and reinforcing), buildings with basements, fire hazards, sewers, viaducts, and bridges.</li> <li>(8) The structures that dominated the built-up area.</li> <li>(9) The locations of the firing positions, in depth, throughout the built-up area.</li> <li>(10) The areas to integrate the dismounted infantry into the company or team defense.</li> </ol> <p>c. Coordinated with adjacent units for dismounted support, as necessary, and ensured that the units were tied-in with the company or the team forces.</p> <p>d. Upgraded the hasty defense and improved the BP, as time permitted.</p> <p>e. Planned for indirect fire in the EA and along possible avenues of approach in front of and behind obstacles.</p> <p><b>NOTE: The fires and effects coordinator (FEC) plans the smoke.</b></p> <p>*12. The element leader develops a company or team fire plan.</p> <p>a. Developed a fire plan as part of a hasty or deliberate BP occupation.</p> <p>b. Located the platoons and oriented the company or team.</p> <p>c. Developed a fire plan that included the company or team sector, the platoon and OPs, obstacles, indirect-fire targets, and final protective fire (FPF), if allocated.</p> <p>d. Ensured that the fire plans of the platoon were received in a timely manner. Made an updated copy of the fire plan for the executive officer (XO) and the platoon leaders, as time permitted.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>e. Verified the plan by conducting rehearsals for counterattack missions based on METT-TC factors.</p> <p>f. Upgraded the fire plan, to include the fire plans for the platoon supplementary firing positions.</p> <p>g. Forwarded a copy of the fire plan to higher HQ.</p> <p><b>NOTE: Check the complete direct- and indirect-fire plan as if you are the enemy attacking the position. Look for weak points in the defense, and make corrections.</b></p> <p>*13. The element and platoon leaders organize the EA.</p> <p>a. Reconnoitered the EA (physically), covering as many options as possible to mass fire. Include the—</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Enemy avenue of approach.</li> <li>(2) Locations of existing and reinforcing obstacles.</li> <li>(3) Key terrain.</li> <li>(4) TRPs.</li> <li>(5) Artillery preplots.</li> </ol> <p>b. Organized the EA to mass direct and indirect fire.</p> <p>c. Organized the fire in the EA, 800 to 2,000 meters from the defending company or team, based on METT-TC factors.</p> <p>d. Used fire to interlock.</p> <p><b>NOTE: The platoons and the company or team mutually support each other with direct fire.</b></p> <p>e. Positioned the company or team around the EA.</p> <p><b>NOTE: One company or platoon is centered in the EAs, and one is positioned on both the right and left flanks.</b></p> <p>f. Ensured that the TRPs were marked for easy reference and used the existing terrain when possible.</p> <p>g. Shifted platoons or firing positions to cover the dead space and weak points.</p> <p>h. Developed an obstacle plan that—</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Tied obstacles into the existing terrain features.</li> <li>(2) Slowed the enemy movement.</li> <li>(3) Concealed obstacles from the enemy.</li> <li>(4) Positioned obstacles on the enemy main avenue of approach.</li> <li>(5) Covered obstacles by directing artillery to the front and rear.</li> <li>(6) Placed obstacles in the EA so the personnel in the rear and on the flanks could fire simultaneously into the front of the enemy regiment using direct and indirect massed fire. Repositioned personnel who were stopped in front of the obstacles.</li> </ol> <p>*14. The element leader briefs the subordinate element leader on the EAs in each sector and on any changes made to the original.</p> <p>*15. The element leader executes the company defensive mission.</p> <p>a. Acknowledged the report or mission from the battalion task force (TF) commander.</p> <p>b. Analyzed the spot report (SPOTREP) or the mission using METT-TC factors. Determined the following:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) The size of the enemy force.</li> <li>(2) The location of the force in relation to the company or team position.</li> <li>(3) The direction of enemy movement.</li> <li>(4) The avenue(s) of approach that the enemy could use to enter the company, team sector, or battalion TF EA.</li> <li>(5) The arrival time of the enemy at the company or team trigger point.</li> </ol>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Alerted the OPs with a SPOTREP that included all information given by the battalion TF commander and any additional information.</p> <p>d. Directed the element to remain hidden until the OP identified the source of smoke dust columns or sounds.</p> <p>e. Ordered the element to immediately prepare to engage the enemy.</p> <p>f. Received SPOTREPs from platoon leaders.</p> <p>g. Reported to the battalion TF commander.</p> <p>h. Controlled the indirect fire on the enemy as they advanced.</p> <p><b>NOTE: This step may also be performed by the FEC.</b></p> <p>i. Ordered the elements into hull-down positions, gave the order to fire, and returned the elements to the hull-down position after the enemy was destroyed.</p> <p>*16. The subordinate element leaders send SPOTREPs to the element leader containing the number and types of vehicles that reached the company or team breaking point.</p> <p><b>NOTE: The SPOTREP may also contain orders from the battalion TF commander to displace to a subsequent BP.</b></p> <p>a. Requested FPF, if scheduled.</p> <p>b. Took direction from the battalion TF commander on whether to continue the mission or to displace.</p> <p><b>NOTE: If the battalion C2 or BCT staff gave no guidance, the element leader coordinates with the flank company or teams and then displaces. The element leader must coordinate with the flank company or teams so that they are not flanked by the enemy.</b></p> <p>*17. The element leader receives a FRAGO from the TF commander ordering a counterattack.</p> <p>a. Conducted prep-to-fire checks.</p> <p>b. Checked the weapon systems for proper loading.</p> <p>*18. The element leader coordinates with the platoon leaders on continuing the mission.</p> <p>*19. The element leader monitors the mission.</p> <p>a. Determined the size, type, and location of the enemy elements.</p> <p>b. Identified the locations of enemy or friendly mines and obstacles.</p> <p>c. Determined the most covered and concealed routes for the company or team to assault the enemy flanks without masking the fire of supporting elements.</p> <p>*20. The counterattack element leader coordinates the counterattack route with the defending element leaders (if deviating from the OPORD route).</p> <p>*21. The defending element leaders alert their platoons that the counterattacking element is going to attack the enemy from the right flank, left flank, or rear.</p> <p>*22. The defending element leaders remind their platoon leaders of the restrictive-fire line (RFL) and to control the direct fire.</p> <p>23. The counterattacking element stays outside of or on the far side of the RFL.</p> <p>*24. The counterattack element leader receives the order to counterattack.</p> <p>a. Ordered the element to begin the counterattack along the identified routes.</p> <p>b. Ordered the element to a position where it could engage the flank or rear of the enemy (for counterattack by fire).</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Ordered the element to move rapidly to the flank or rear position of the enemy trail battalions, close in, and fire at high speed (for counterattack by fire and maneuver).</p> <p><b>NOTE: The tanks, if available, lead and destroy the enemy tanks. The armored personnel carriers (APCs) follow and destroy light vehicles and the dismounted infantry.</b></p> <p>*25. The defending element leaders control the fire behind the RFL.</p> <p>26. The defending elements of the battalion TF continue to fire upon the enemy and halt the enemy elements that advance from the front.</p> <p>27. The element conducts consolidation and reorganization activities to continue the mission.</p> <p>*28. The element leader reports to the higher HQ according to the field standing operating procedure (SOP).</p> <p><b>NOTE: The digital units send reports and unit locations and update the common operational picture (COP) to provide situational awareness (SA) to the units operating in the area.</b></p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-0011	Reorganize as Infantry
05-1-4000	Conduct Logistics Operations
05-2-0018	Conduct Report Procedures
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Three Engineer Platoon Headquarters

**TASK:** Prepare an Obstacle Plan (05-1-2000)  
 (FM 90-7) (FM 20-32) (FM 5-102)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is supporting a maneuver unit. An engineer estimate and an initial engineer plan have been developed to support the operation. The engineer cell, the assistant brigade engineer (ABE) section, or the Operations and Training Officer (U.S. Army) (S3) section is tasked to prepare an obstacle plan using an estimate and guidance provided by the supported unit commander. Higher headquarters (HQ) provides guidance and identifies responsibilities; reserve and situational obstacles; obstacle belts and zones; obstacle restrictions; scatterable mine (SCATMINE) employment authority; and concept, priorities, and special instructions. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The obstacle plan supports the task force (TF) commander's scheme of maneuver. The plan outlines how and where tactical obstacles are emplaced to turn, disrupt, fix, or block enemy forces and multiply the effects and capabilities of firepower. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The battalion staff obtains available information.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined the facts and developed assumptions.</li> <li>b. Analyzed the higher HQ mission and the commander's intent.</li> <li>c. Analyzed the relative combat power.</li> <li>d. Issued the commander's guidance.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. The battalion staff develops an obstacle plan to support the course of action (COA). Focused on the following:                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Fire analysis.</li> <li>b. Obstacle intent integration. The battalion staff decided which specific effect each directed obstacle group must achieve. It planned the obstacle groups to—                                     <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Disrupt the enemy.</li> <li>(2) Turn the enemy into areas where friendly units can mass fires.</li> <li>(3) Fix the enemy in the engagement area (EA) and enhance fires.</li> <li>(4) Block the enemy along an avenue of approach.</li> <li>(5) Determine the target</li> <li>(6) Determine the location</li> </ol> </li> <li>c. Obstacle priorities.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. The battalion staff conducts war gaming.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined which COA to recommend to the commander.</li> <li>b. Considered the—                                     <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Obstacles within the total context of the COA.</li> <li>(2) Enemy reactions at obstacle groups versus the desired obstacle effect.</li> <li>(3) Enemy breaching capability that may make one or more varieties of individual obstacles preferable.</li> <li>(4) Obstacle locations that inhibit friendly maneuver.</li> <li>(5) Compatible obstacle effects and weapon system capabilities.</li> <li>(6) Adequate fire control measures to support the obstacle effect.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>4. The staff adjusts the COA to include the obstacle plan. Adjustments included the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Location changes of directed obstacle groups.</li> <li>b. Obstacle effect changes at a specific location.</li> <li>c. Situational obstacle group additions.</li> <li>d. Reserve obstacle group additions.</li> <li>e. Identification of other mobility requirements.</li> </ul> <p>5. The battalion staff identifies mobility requirements. Determined—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Which obstacles needed lanes or bypasses available for friendly forces.</li> <li>b. The locations for lanes and bypasses based on tactical repositioning from the maneuver graphics, such as a route, axis, or subsequent position.</li> <li>c. The command and control (C2) mobility requirements, including plans for rehearsals and physical placement of target reference points (TRPs).</li> <li>d. The lanes and bypasses that were needed to support sustainment traffic.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: Consider the main supply routes (MSRs) into and through the TF area, the TF logistics release point (LRP), the routes the company team takes from its position to the LRP, and the location of key TF logistics nodes.</b></p> <p>6. The battalion staff conducts a more detailed obstacle plan that supports that COA, after comparing the COAs and determining the COA for recommendation to the commander.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined the tentative design and resourcing for the obstacle plan and completed the final design and resourcing (after the commander approved the COA with final changes).</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: The final design normally occurs at the company team and emplacing unit level. The staff can develop a detailed concept that will require only minor modifications to support the final approved plan.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Used the plan for the individual obstacles, which made up a group, as a guide for the TF staff to adjust the resource allocation.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: If time is available for detailed reconnaissance, the group design may provide the company teams with the actual obstacle design for each group. The design of the obstacle groups usually serves as a guide to company teams, and they conduct the actual design of the individual obstacles with the emplacing unit leader.</b></p> <p>7. The battalion staff completes the plan and publishes the order once the commander selects a COA.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Developed and published the scheme of engineer operations (SOEO).</li> <li>b. Developed and published the essential mobility-survivability tasks (EMSTs)</li> </ul> <p>8. The battalion staff makes final adjustments to the plan and provides subordinate units with oral, written, and graphical information that has enough detail to allow the subordinate unit to conduct the operation.</p> <p>9. The TF gives information concerning obstacles to subordinates using the scheme-of-obstacles overlay and the obstacle execution matrix.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used the scheme-of-obstacles overlay to depict the location of obstacle belts, brigade obstacle groups, and TF groups within the TF sector. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Included obstacle restrictions from any higher level (the staff annotates restrictions that it cannot show graphically).</li> <li>(2) Portrayed obstacle groups using an obstacle effect graphic.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>NOTE: Obstacle graphics define the general location and the effect to be achieved by individual obstacles. The obstacle overlay does not normally depict individual obstacle locations. Alternately, the staff may include individual proposed obstacle graphics with the obstacle effect graphic to guide the emplacing unit and the owning unit on the general configuration of the obstacle group. Commanders must exercise caution if they use individual proposed obstacles on an overlay. They must ensure that inexperienced subordinates do not attempt to emplace obstacles exactly as depicted on an overlay, instead of properly siting the obstacle.</b></p> <p>b. Used the obstacle execution matrix, which included specific instructions and detailed information concerning the obstacles on the scheme-of-obstacles overlay. As a minimum, a directed obstacle execution matrix should have included the following:</p> <p><b>NOTE: Normally there is a separate execution matrix for each type of tactical obstacle.</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) The zone, belt, or group designation and individual obstacle numbers.</li> <li>(2) The location (grid coordinates appropriate to the detail of the plan). This may be a center-of-mass grid for the group, start and end points of the group trace, or grid coordinates for individual obstacles, if known.</li> <li>(3) The obstacle effect for the group.</li> <li>(4) The priority for the group.</li> <li>(5) The emplacing and owning unit.</li> <li>(6) The location of any lanes and closure instructions or reference to a reserve obstacle matrix, if appropriate.</li> <li>(7) Material or assets allocated for the group (possibly listed by the number of standard obstacles).</li> <li>(8) The location of the obstacle materials (the Class IV and Class V point or other site).</li> <li>(9) Any special instructions for each group.</li> </ol>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
052-195-3067	Determine Logistical Requirements for Wire Obstacles
052-195-4009	Determine Logistical Requirements for Nonexplosive Antivehicular Obstacles
052-195-4050	Prepare Engineer Estimates
052-195-4065	Conduct Engineer Tactical Planning
052-704-9101	Plan Obstacle Groups, Belts, Zones and Restrictions

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-1-0081	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD)
05-6-0003	Prepare an Engineer Annex

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
Equipment Section

**TASK:** Report Obstacle Information (05-2-0015)  
(FM 3-34.2) (FM 20-32) (FM 3-34)  
(FM 5-0) (FM 5-170) (FM 5-34)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element reports and/or receives obstacle and scatterable-mine (SCATMINE) information. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Higher headquarters (HQ) and subordinate units have accurate and timely information on obstacles in the area of operation (AO). The location of obstacles is reported to update the common operational picture (COP), the situational awareness (SA), and obstacle overlays. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>1. The element reports the obstacle information required by the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).</p> <p><b>NOTE: The digital units can send reports and update the digital overlay to provide the current SA.</b></p> <p>a. Reported and received a status report and an obstacle document (OBSDOC) that gave the serial number, type, location (8-digit coordinate), progress, completion date of obstacles, and the date and time the report was generated.</p> <p><b>NOTE: Proper authorization for emplacement of obstacles must be obtained.</b></p> <p>b. Received a SCATMINE record or a SCATMINE warning report.</p> <p>c. Received a map sheet(s).</p> <p>d. Received information on the enemy situation.</p> <p>e. Received additional assets or required equipment.</p> <p><b>NOTE: Notify the supply section and the engineer elements of the type and quantity of assets or equipment required.</b></p> <p>f. Reported and recorded obstacle information (time, unit, type, location, and serial number).</p> <p>g. Reported information on the obstacle handoff (time, unit, type, location, and serial number).</p> <p>2. The element reports obstacle information to the supported unit and higher HQs.</p> <p>* 3. The officer in charge (OIC) or the noncommissioned officer in charge (NCOIC) reports to the commander on the type of obstacles; the unit responsible for emplacement, progress, completion date, handoff, and execution of the obstacles; the enemy situation; and the commander's guidance on the execution and plotting of SCATMINES.</p> <p>* 4. The OIC or the NCOIC briefs the team on the type, serial number, location, emplacement progress, and possible hand off of obstacles; the relocation of material; the emplacement and execution of SCATMINES; and the unit and location of tasked elements, if assistance is required.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 5. The OIC or the NCOIC reports to the supported or parent unit (based on command or support relationship) on the requirements for material, equipment, recovery vehicles, maintenance support, obstacle material, communications equipment, mission location, map sheet(s), and the engineer elements needing assistance.</p> <p>6. The operations noncommissioned officer (NCO) records obstacle information from the subordinate elements and the battalion Operations and Training Officer (U.S. Army) (S3).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Updated the SA and obstacle overlays with team locations; emplaced, executed, and handed off obstacles; intended and executed SCATMINE targets; and encountered obstacle locations.</li> <li>b. Maintained an accurate status of emplaced, executed, handed off, and encountered obstacles and intended and executed SCATMINE targets by maintaining an updated and current digital SA OBSDOC.</li> <li>c. Maintained and filed copies of reports sent to higher HQ.</li> <li>d. Coordinated with the battalion S3 to provide updates on the status of obstacles emplaced by the subordinate elements of the company, obstacle execution, SCATMINES, obstacle enhancement, and any required assistance.</li> </ul> <p>* 7. The element leader briefs the supported commander or higher HQs on SCATMINES, reserve targets, and other obstacles, to include their status, location, self-destruct times, dimensions, delivery means, and handoff.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

\*\* indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
052-193-3055	Prepare or Compile a Nonnuclear-Demolition Target Folder
052-901-9101	Conduct Troop Leading Procedures at the Company/ Team Level
113-587-2070	Operate SINCGARS Single-Channel (SC)
113-587-2071	Operate SINCGARS Frequency Hopping (FH) (Net Members)

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-0081	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD)
05-2-0018	Conduct Report Procedures

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



- ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Three Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Nine Engineer Squads  
 Company Headquarters Section  
 Brigade Engineer Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section  
 Equipment Platoon  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Three Assault and Obstacle Sections  
 Regimental Engineer Section  
 Combat Medic Section

**TASK:** Provide Engineer Support to Breaching Operations (05-2-0114)  
 (FM 3-34.2) (FM 1-02) (FM 20-32)  
 (FM 5-34)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is in a contemporary operating environment and higher headquarters (HQ) commander directs the engineer element to support breaching operations. The task force (TF) has the mission of conducting an offensive operation and has designated support, breach, and assault forces. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element creates lanes through obstacles, where directed by the TF commander, to maintain the momentum of the attack. The element marks the lane to minimize friendly force casualties caused by an unmarked obstacle. The unit reports, by the quickest means possible, to update the common operational picture (COP) overlays, according to the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element commander receives a fragmentary order (FRAGO) or operation order (OPORD) to conduct breaching operations. The commander conducts the military decision-making process (MDMP), with emphasis on preparing for breaching operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified the personnel and equipment needed and task-organized platoons to reduce obstacles in support of the maneuver commander's plan.</li> <li>b. Rehearsed the mission with platoon leaders.</li> <li>c. Ensured that each element understood their mission.</li> <li>d. Ensured that platoon equipment was checked for serviceability, precombat inspections (PCIs) had been performed, and everything specified in the unit standing operating procedure (SOP) was obtained, including items required for the specific mission.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: An engineer company may require augmentation with additional equipment and personnel (up to two additional platoons) to support the deliberate attack.</b></p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>e. Identified engineer-required Class V munitions, and requested the munitions through the maneuver unit (if applicable, based on the command or support relationship).</p> <p>f. Task-organized the company and equipment to support the mission, identifying the engineer support needed for the breach, support, and assault force, with priority to the breach force.</p> <p>g. Coordinated with the maneuver commander or the Operations and Training Officer (U.S. Army) (S3) to place the unit in the TF formation.</p> <p><b>NOTE: The engineer company leadership must be very familiar with the maneuver unit TACSOP.</b></p> <p>2. The element conducts actions in the assembly area.</p> <p>a. Performed precombat checks (PCC) with special emphasis on the reduction of assets.</p> <p>b. Linked up with the supported units, if applicable.</p> <p>c. Conducted detailed rehearsals with supported units if time permitted.</p> <p>3. The breach element moves with the maneuver unit to the last covered and concealed location before the obstacle(s).</p> <p>4. The element takes action as directed by the maneuver commander according to the maneuver unit TACSOP.</p> <p>* 5. The element commander positions subordinate elements well forward and integrates into the breach and assault force combat formations.</p> <p><b>NOTE: The commander anticipates locations and/or events where engineer support is essential.</b></p> <p>* 6. The element commander anticipates obstacle locations based on the engineer battlefield assessment.</p> <p>a. Obtained an intelligence summary (INTSUM) from the brigade Intelligence Officer (U.S. Army) (S2).</p> <p>b. Determined the obstacle orientation and/or composition and types of fortifications that may be constructed.</p> <p><b>NOTE: Digital units can provide real time obstacle intelligence by unmanned aerial vehicles (UAVs) through the maneuver support cell.</b></p> <p>7. The element commander supports the breaching operation.</p> <p>a. Directed engineer platoon(s) to conduct an enemy obstacle reconnaissance.</p> <p>b. Advised the maneuver commander on the best location to bypass or reduce the obstacle(s).</p> <p>c. Directed the engineer platoon(s) supporting the breach force to reduce the tactical obstacles along the attack axis.</p> <p>8. The element supports the breaching operation.</p> <p>a. Supported the breach and assault forces with priority to the breach force.</p> <p>b. Provided limited support to allow the support force to move into an overwatch position.</p> <p>c. Prepared to support both mounted and dismounted attacks.</p> <p>(1) Maintained a minimum of one lane per assaulting company or two lanes 100 meters apart per TF.</p> <p>(2) Created a lane in 10 minutes or less if personnel or equipment were exposed to direct or observed indirect fire.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>NOTE: The above 10 minutes refers to the time allowed to reduce the obstacle or to create the lane. It is the maximum time permitted for personnel and equipment to remain exposed in front of the obstacle. When covert breaching operations are conducted, or at a location where the unit is not under enemy fire, no time standard is established.</b></p> <p>* 9. The element commander retains the ability to reinforce or supplement the efforts of the forward platoons.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">a. Positioned additional Class V assets in the combat trains.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">b. Positioned additional breaching assets in the combat trains.</p> <p>10. The engineer element marks the lane(s) according to the unit TACSOP.</p> <p>*11. The engineer element leader reports the location of the lane according to the unit TACSOP.</p> <p>12. The element prepares to continue the mission.</p> <p>*13. The element commander reports the location of the lanes and/or obstacles to higher HQ according to the unit TACSOP.</p> <p><b>NOTE: Digital units update the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below System (FBCB2) overlays and populate the blue situational awareness (SA) showing the entrance and exits of the breached lanes.</b></p> <p>14. The element conducts a lane or obstacle turnover.</p> <p>*15. The element commander directs an engineer platoon or squad to remain at the lane or obstacle to turn over the lane or obstacle to the follow-on unit(s). The lane or obstacle marking is approved, and the marking method is explained to the follow-on unit.</p> <p>16. The element supports the maneuver unit assault on the objective.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-0015	Report Obstacle Information
05-2-0018	Conduct Report Procedures
05-3-0013	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures
05-3-1004	Perform an Obstacle and Restriction Reconnaissance

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
12-1-0403.05-T01A	Report Casualties

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Three Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Nine Engineer Squads  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section  
 Six Engineer Squads

**TASK:** Support a Water Crossing Operation (05-2-1004)  
 (FM 90-13) (FM 5-34)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The company is supporting a maneuver force during a deliberate water crossing operation. Higher headquarters (HQ) selects the reconnaissance site, and subordinate elements complete the reconnaissance. The mission is to prepare and maintain a crossing site, support an assault boat crossing, or prepare and operate engineer regulating points (ERPs) and move personnel across with equipment. Bridging assets are organic or available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The condition of the crossing site does not interfere with the planned flow of the vehicles across the water. The assault force gets to the far shore at the right time, in the right place, and in the correct order or the ERPs facilitate a smooth traffic flow across the rafts or bridge according to the crossing schedule. The site is operational by the time specified in the operation order (OPORD). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The company commander conducts troop-leading procedures (TLPs) with emphasis on the preparation of supporting a water crossing operation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified the personnel and equipment needed to support the water crossing.</li> <li>b. Rehearsed the mission with the platoon leaders.</li> <li>c. Ensured that each element understood the mission.</li> <li>d. Ensured that the equipment for each element was checked for serviceability and that each element had everything that was required for the specified mission.</li> <li>e. Task-organized the company to support the mission.</li> <li>f. Identified the organic personnel and equipment support needed for preparing ERPs and crossing sites.</li> <li>g. Coordinated with the battalion Operations and Training Officer (U.S. Army) (S3) to obtain any additional specific details of the mission and requested augmentation support, if needed.</li> </ul> <p>2. The company supports an assault boat crossing.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Prepared the assault boats.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Inflated the boats.</li> <li>(2) Checked for proper equipment.                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>( a ) Ensured that enough paddles for a silent crossing were available (11 per boat).</li> <li>( b ) Ensured that the outboard motors (OBMs) for a powered crossing were available.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(c) Ensured that enough floatation devices were available (1 per Soldier).</p> <p>(3) Ensured that one boat per assault site (powered by an OBM, if available) was designated as a safety boat, if practical.</p> <p>b. Rehearsed the crossing with the assault force during daytime and nighttime conditions.</p> <p>c. Designated an engineer crossing control officer to supervise the embarkation of the assault waves and follow-up force at each assault site.</p> <p>d. Designated an engineer landing officer to control the debarkation on the far shore.</p> <p>e. Marked the far shore exit points, ensuring that each boat had a specific landing point.</p> <p><b>NOTE: The point should be visible during daylight and under reduced visibility conditions.</b></p> <p>f. Established dismounted rally points on the near shore to link up the assaulting forces with the boats.</p> <p><b>NOTE: Each assaulting wave may use the same rally points as the previous wave.</b></p> <p>(1) Crossed each assaulting force in the order designated in the OPORD and the crossing plan.</p> <p>(2) Manned the rally points.</p> <p>g. Operated the assault boats.</p> <p>(1) Operated each boat with three engineers during a silent crossing or two engineers during a powered crossing.</p> <p>(2) Used enough passengers in the silent crossing to paddle and control the boat across the river.</p> <p><b>NOTE: The RB-15 has a maximum capacity of 15 passengers. However, equipment required during the assault may reduce the number of passengers that the boat can safely carry. The distance across the river and the current of the river are the governing factors. If conditions permit, each boat should carry squad-sized elements to maintain squad integrity.</b></p> <p>(3) Maintained the assault boats on line and in the order specified by the maneuver crossing force.</p> <p>(4) Landed the boats in the correct location on the far shore.</p> <p>h. Deflated the boats on the far shore or returned them to the nearshore for another wave of assault troops. The boats that were returned for another wave arrived at the correct location on the nearshore to facilitate a smooth linkup with follow-on forces.</p> <p>i. Repeated the procedure in subtask 2g until all of the assault waves had crossed.</p> <p>3. The company identifies and maintains a crossing site when ordered.</p> <p>a. Identified a crossing site using a map or ground reconnaissance.</p> <p>(1) Selected a site at the narrow part of the river.</p> <p>(2) Ensured that the current was less than 1.5 meters per second, if possible.</p> <p>(3) Confirmed that both ingress and egress routes were available on both banks.</p> <p>(4) Ensured that bank slopes were less than 33 percent for an amphibious vehicle swim site.</p> <p>(5) Ensured appropriate bank heights for the following:</p> <p>(a) A raft with ramps (no greater than 1 meter for vertical banks).</p> <p>(b) An M4T6 or Class 60 bridge (76 centimeters).</p> <p>(c) A ribbon bridge or raft (1 meter).</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(6) Checked for adequate water depth.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>( a ) Ensured a water depth of 2 meters for amphibious vehicles.</li> <li>( b ) Ensured a water depth of over 127 centimeters for shallow draft, bridge erection boats, light tactical rafts, and ribbon bridges.</li> <li>( c ) Ensured a water depth of over 102 centimeters for a 27-foot bridge erection boat.</li> </ul> <p>(7) Selected a site where the river bottom did not have obstructions that could interfere with amphibious vehicles, boats, or rafts.</p> <p>b. Prepared the crossing site for heavy equipment.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Covered the entry bank with a gravel base or mobile matting to maintain trafficability.</li> <li>(2) Prepared the exit bank with the same considerations as the entrance bank.</li> <li>(3) Ensured that vehicles swimming across were able to climb the exit bank.</li> <li>(4) Marked the entry and exit points for both day and night crossings according to the OPORD.</li> <li>(5) Ensured that the width of the entry and exit banks matched the width required for the crossing vehicles.</li> </ul> <p>c. Ensured that the conditions of the crossing site did not interfere with swim, raft, or bridge operations.</p> <p>4. The company prepares and operates ERPs in staging or holding areas or at crossing sites.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided enough space in a covered and concealed location for vehicles moving to the crossing site.</li> <li>b. Located ERPs on or near ingress routes to the crossing site. Ensured that the travel time from the ERP to the crossing site was less than the round-trip crossing time for a raft.</li> <li>c. Checked the vehicles at the ERP. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Checked the vehicles outside the crossing area. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>( a ) Briefed the drivers of the vehicles on raft or bridge crossing requirements.</li> <li>( b ) Ensured that vehicle weights did not exceed the raft or bridge capacity.</li> <li>( c ) Diverted the over-classed vehicles.</li> </ul> </li> <li>(2) Checked the vehicles before getting to the raft sites. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>( a ) Identified the carrying capacity of rafting or bridging equipment.</li> <li>( b ) Established raft loads that preserved unit integrity.</li> <li>( c ) Guided the vehicles to the rafts.</li> </ul> </li> <li>(3) Checked the vehicles before getting to the bridge sites. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>( a ) Diverted the over-classed vehicles.</li> <li>( b ) Guided the vehicles within the crossing site to facilitate a smooth traffic flow. Ensured that the vehicles maintained a 100-foot spacing and did not exceed 40 kilometers per hour on bridges during normal crossings.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>* 5. The company commander submits progress reports to higher HQ using the Army Battle Command System (ABCS) or frequency-modulated (FM) means according to the unit standing operating procedures (SOP).</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
052-198-1329	Prepare Ribbon Bridge Equipment for Air Transport

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-1-0081	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD)
05-1-6001	Request a Standard Geospatial Product
05-2-1013	Conduct a Water Crossing Site Reconnaissance
05-3-0013	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures
05-3-0045	Conduct Water Safety Operations

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



**ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Three Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Nine Engineer Squads

**TASK:** Conduct Enemy or Unobserved Minefield Clearing Operations (05-2-1005)  
 (FM 20-32) (DA FORM 1355) (FM 5-34)  
 (STANAG 2036)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The engineer element is providing support to a maneuver task force and receives the directive to perform a minefield clearance. The area is secure and enemy fire is unlikely. The equipment that is assigned to the company is in serviceable condition and has enough demolitions to accomplish the mission. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element removes or destroys all mines. The element enforces standards to minimize the loss of personnel or equipment. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The element leader verifies critical data from Department of the Army (DA) Form 1355 (Minefield Record), if available.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Verified the minefield location.</li> <li>b. Confirmed the number and type of mines (antitank [AT] or antipersonnel [AP]).</li> <li>c. Verified the minefield boundaries.</li> <li>d. Verified the number of rows and the location of landmarks.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The element leader organizes the company for clearance operations.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established a marking party for the minefield boundaries, if not previously marked.</li> <li>b. Designated personnel to operate control points at the rear of the minefield.</li> <li>c. Designated personnel to operate a mine dump, if friendly mines were recovered.</li> <li>d. Established minesweeping teams.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. The element leader directs the locating and marking of all mines and lanes.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assigned start points (SPs) and areas to clear to a minimum width of 25 meters and the full depth of the minefield.</li> <li>b. Ensured that mines were marked as soon as they were identified.</li> <li>c. Ensured that mine detector operators were at least 30 meters apart at all times, swept a 1.5-meter path, and were relieved every 20 minutes.</li> <li>d. Deployed the teams in an echelon formation.</li> <li>e. Ensured that lanes were marked as the sweep teams proceeded down them.</li> </ul> </li> <li>4. The element destroys all of the mines in place.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Detonated all foreign mines, United States (U.S.) mines with antihandling devices (AHDs), booby traps, and mines that had been in control of enemy forces.                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Located and marked the mines.</li> <li>(2) Placed a 1-pound block of explosives primed with detonating cord directly next to each mine.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(3) Used a line or ring main to detonate emplaced charges, either collectively or individually. (4) Ensured detonation did not take place until all personnel had exited the minefield to a safe distance or area. b. Requested assistance from explosive ordnance disposal (EOD) personnel, if foreign mines required recovery by hand.  5. The element proofs the minefield with electronic detectors, mine detection dogs, mine rollers, or other expedient methods to ensure that all the mines are recovered or destroyed.  * 6. The element leader ensures that all unit members follow the safety considerations. a. Ensured that unit members left metal objects outside the minefield when the use of magnetically influenced fuzes was known or suspected. b. Ensured that sweep-team members wore protective clothing, such as a body armored set, individual countermine (BASIC); helmet; and a flak vest. c. Ensured that unit members did not run in the minefield. d. Advised the members to assume that all of the mines were equipped with AHDs.  * 7. The element leader ensures that all of the required reports are sent to higher headquarters (HQ). a. Ensured that the status of progress reports was sent according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP). b. Ensured that the completion report was sent according to the unit SOP.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
052-192-1021	Locate Mines by Visual Means
052-192-1127	Prepare an AN/PSS-12 Mine Detector for Operation
052-192-1128	Locate Mines With the AN/PSS-12 Mine Detector
052-192-1230	Identify Mines and Firing Devices, Friendly and Enemy
052-192-1266	Locate Mines By Probing
052-192-2026	Direct a Minefield Marking Party
052-192-2084	Direct a Mine Clearing Line Charge Loading Team
052-192-3050	Direct a Mine-Sweeping Party
052-192-3129	Direct the Removal of a Row Minefield
052-192-3177	Supervise Mine Clearing Line Charge (MICLIC) Operations
052-192-4045	Conduct Route Sweep Operations
052-192-4052	Supervise Minefield Clearing Operations
052-192-4053	Supervise Minefield Breaching Operations

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
052-192-4102	Supervise the Removal of Row Minefields
052-193-1013	Neutralize Booby Traps
052-193-2030	Clear Misfires

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)
05-3-1008	Conduct Minesweeping Operations
05-3-3007	Remove a Hasty Protective Row Minefield

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Three Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Company Headquarters Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Equipment Platoon  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Equipment Section

**TASK:** Conduct Quartering Party Operations (05-2-3007)  
 (FM 3-90.1) (FM 20-32) (FM 5-0)  
 (FM 5-10) (FM 5-170) (FM 5-34)

**ITERATION:** 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** A unit is directed to move to a new location and establish an assembly area (AA). This task is always performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The quartering party departs ahead of the main body of the unit and completes all tasks in the new AA before the main body arrives. The unit moves all personnel and equipment to the assigned position within the time specified in the operation order (OPORD).

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader organizes the quartering party.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selected a noncommissioned officer in charge (NCOIC).</li> <li>b. Selected a security element or coordinated for security to be provided by the supported maneuver unit.</li> <li>c. Selected subordinate-element representatives according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).</li> <li>d. Organized a nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) reconnaissance party from the NCOIC, the security element, and the subordinate-element representatives to satisfy the threat conditions.</li> <li>e. Conducted troop-leading procedures.</li> <li>f. Conducted precombat checks (PCCs) and precombat inspections (PCIs).</li> <li>g. Reviewed the unit SOP and tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).</li> <li>h. Conducted risk management and safety briefings according to the unit SOP or TACSOP.</li> </ul> <p>2. The quartering party conducts rehearsals on minesweeping operations, actions on contact for the security teams, and movement guide procedures. Conducted a rehearsal using one of the following rehearsal types:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. The confirmation brief.</li> <li>b. The back brief.</li> <li>c. The combined arms.</li> <li>d. The battle drill.</li> <li>e. The SOP.</li> </ul> <p>* 3. The quartering party leader conducts a map reconnaissance identifying the start point (SP), potential ambush sites, checkpoints (CPs), rest stops, and the AA.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>NOTE: The route used by the quartering party can be the same as the route used by the main body of the unit, as long as security is maintained along the route. If security is not maintained, the main body should conduct a route clearance to the new AA.</b></p> <p>4. The quartering party prepares the vehicles for the convoy.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Performed preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on vehicles and equipment.</li> <li>Loaded vehicles according to the load plan.</li> <li>Prepared troop-carrying vehicles for combat survivability by covering the floors with a double layer of sandbags or Kevlar® blankets.</li> <li>Maintained a guard force to prevent theft and sabotage.</li> </ol> <p>* 5. The quartering party leader briefs convoy personnel.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Briefed the convoy route, to include the medical- and maintenance-support locations and the destination.</li> <li>Provided a strip map to each vehicle commander (or driver).</li> </ol> <p><b>NOTE: The digital units input routes and checkpoints into the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System by using an overlay message or a long format message according to the unit TACSOP.</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Briefed the prescribed march rate, the catch-up speed, the distance between the vehicles, and radio frequency.</li> <li>Briefed accident and breakdown procedures.</li> <li>Briefed limited-visibility movement procedures.</li> <li>Briefed the chain of command.</li> </ol> <p>6. The quartering party relocates to the new AA.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Traveled separately from, and ahead of, the main body.</li> <li>Reported route limitations and other specified command interest items to the next higher element.</li> </ol> <p>7. The quartering party reconnoiters the area and notifies the commander of the conditions.</p> <p><b>NOTE: The digital units update the enemy locations, mined areas, and NBC contaminated areas on the FBCB2 System to update the situational awareness (SA) and common operational picture (COP).</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Reported the position of enemy forces.</li> <li>Located the areas containing mines, booby traps, and NBC contamination.</li> <li>Evaluated terrain conditions, to include trafficability, cover and concealment, and the availability of adequate routes into and out of the AA.</li> <li>Evaluated the communication system required for the AA.</li> </ol> <p>* 8. The quartering party leader notifies the commander of the condition of the area.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Received orders and prepared the area for the main body, if conditions were satisfactory.</li> <li>Requested additional instructions from the next higher commander and moved to the alternate AA or found another location and repeated step 7, if conditions were unsatisfactory.</li> </ol> <p>9. The quartering party prepares the area to receive the main body.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Secured the area.</li> <li>Marked or removed any obstacles and mines.</li> <li>Organized the area, divided it into sectors for each unit, and selected locations for the command post.</li> <li>Improved and marked the entrances, exits, and internal routes.</li> <li>Marked vehicle positions.</li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
10. Each element representative from the quartering party guides his element, without delay, from the release point (RP) to the sector of that element of the AA (mounted, if possible).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
052-192-1128	Locate Mines With the AN/PSS-12 Mine Detector
052-243-1506	Classify a Soil Using the Unified Soil Classification System

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
03-2-3008.05-T01A	Conduct a Radiological, Chemical, or Biological Reconnaissance or Survey
03-3-C201.05-T01A	Prepare for Operations Under Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical (NBC) Conditions
05-2-3003	Defend a Convoy Against a Ground Attack
05-3-1008	Conduct Minesweeping Operations
07-2-1301.05-T01A	Conduct a Convoy

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Company  
 Three Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Nine Engineer Squads  
 Company Headquarters  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Three Assault and Obstacle Sections  
 Regimental Engineer Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Equipment Section

**TASK:** React to Indirect Fire (07-1-1923.05-T01A)  
 (FM 7-7) (FM 3-21.71) (FM 7-10)  
 (FM 7-8)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is moving, halted, or occupying a defensive position. Any member of the platoon gives the alert, INCOMING, or a round impacts on or near their location. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Within 2 seconds of the alert, the leader designates the direction and the distance to move. The platoon moves to the specified location. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The element reacts to indirect fire while moving mounted. 2. The drivers move rapidly out of the impact area in the direction ordered by the leader. 3. The personnel close all hatches. 4. Vehicle commanders repeat, INCOMING, to alert squad personnel. * 5. The element leader gives the direction and distance to move; for example, 3 O'CLOCK, 200 METERS. 6. The element reacts to indirect fire while moving dismounted. a. Ensured that if vehicles with mounted weapons were available, the vehicles— (1) Halted as close as possible to the dismounted team, allowing personnel to mount. (2) Moved rapidly out of the impact area in the direction ordered by the squad leader. b. Ensured that if vehicles were not available, dismounted personnel kept low and ran out of the impact area in the direction and at the distance ordered by the squad leader. 7. The element reacts to indirect fire when in a defensive position. a. Moved the vehicles immediately out of the impact area to alternate positions. b. Protected any dismounted personnel by having each one go under the overhead cover of their fighting positions.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
8. The element members move to designated rally points according to the element operation order (OPORD). 9. The element establishes immediate security at the designated rally point. 10. The element consolidates and reorganizes. *11. The element leader submits a shelling report (SHELREP) or a mortar bombing report (MORTREP) to higher headquarters (HQ). <b>NOTE: The digital units send the SHELREP using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means or the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System according to the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP).</b>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-0018	Conduct Report Procedures

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



- ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Three Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Nine Engineer Squads  
 Company Headquarters Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Equipment Sections  
 Equipment Platoon  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Three Assault and Obstacle Sections  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Equipment Section

**TASK:** Conduct Passage of Lines (Passing/Stationary) (07-2-1125.05-T01A)  
 (FM 7-10) (FM 7-92)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is required to conduct a passage of lines. The enemy can attack by air, indirect fire, and up to company-sized (mounted or dismounted) forces. The unit may be augmented with additional maneuver, combat support (CS), or combat service support (CSS) assets. Civilians, government agencies, nongovernmental organizations, and local and international media may be in the area. Rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI) have been published. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element coordinates with the stationary unit, exchanges all the required information, and reports the results of the coordination. The passage is conducted at the time specified in the operation order (OPORD). There is no compromise of security, and the battle handover is completed as specified. If available, the company uses digital equipment as necessary or as directed to accomplish the mission. No friendly unit suffers casualties or damage to equipment as a result of fratricide. The company complies with the ROE and the ROI. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>NOTE:</b> The Digital Navigation System equipment allows constant situational awareness (SA) between elements conducting a linkup, passage of lines, or a relief operation (any operation that involves friendly units moving toward each other) to aid navigation and fratricide prevention. For example, a moving squad or vehicle can monitor the location of a stationary unit and linkup site using the position updates and digital graphics displayed on the digital display. The stationary unit can also monitor the location of the moving unit as it moves along the prescribed route to the linkup point by monitoring position updates on the digital display. As the moving force closes on the linkup site, the stationary force is more aware of its presence and location, reducing the possibility of fratricide. The moving unit does the same type of monitoring to reduce fratricide potential. Once the moving unit nears the linkup location, the stationary unit should challenge it. This may be done using any prearranged signals, to include digitally, visually, or audible sounds. For example, the stationary unit can give the moving unit a series of flashes using an infrared source during limited visibility. The moving force responds with a precoordinated number of flashes. The challenge and password is also used</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>between the two units, digitally or verbally.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The commander receives an OPORD from higher headquarters (HQ) and initiates planning and coordination for the operation.</li> <li>* 2. The passing force commander meets the stationary unit commander and arranges for a specific time and location for coordinating the passage of respective companies (platoon leaders should be included).</li> <li>3. The element conducts digital command and control (C2) of operations.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained SA.</li> <li>b. Submitted reports and overlays.</li> <li>c. Directed movement, positioning, and fires.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 4. The leader or his representative coordinates the passage through and reentry of the lines with the forward unit leader or his representative.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Gave the unit identification.</li> <li>b. Gave the times of departure and return.</li> <li>c. Gave the unit area of operations (AO).</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 5. The stationary unit commander provides the leader or his representative with the following:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided terrain information.</li> <li>b. Provided known or suspected enemy positions.</li> <li>c. Provided likely enemy ambush sites.</li> <li>d. Provided the latest enemy activity.</li> <li>e. Provided detailed information on friendly positions.</li> <li>f. Provided obstacle locations.</li> <li>g. Provided the fire support plan.</li> <li>h. Provided unit support (fire support, litter teams, guides, communications, or reaction forces).</li> <li>i. Provided signal operation instructions (SOI) information, the signal plan, the reentry signal, the running password, and procedures to be used by the unit and guide during departure and reentry.</li> <li>j. Provided the locations of the dismounting point (if needed), the company assembly area (AA), routes, and contact and passage points.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 6. Leaders of the two units plan for and coordinate the following:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated the exchange of enemy intelligence.</li> <li>b. Planned for the reconnaissance of positions and routes.</li> <li>c. Coordinated the scheme of maneuver of the passing unit.</li> <li>d. Coordinated the exchange of communication information.</li> <li>e. Planned for recognition signals for the passage.</li> <li>f. Planned for guides (down to squad level) and traffic control measures.</li> <li>g. Planned for security measures for the passage.</li> <li>h. Coordinated fire support responsibilities and fire plans.</li> <li>i. Coordinated the transfer of responsibility and actions on enemy contact during passage.</li> <li>j. Coordinated CSS.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 7. Leaders coordinate specific control measures for the passage.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Included contact points.</li> <li>b. Included passage routes and lanes.</li> <li>c. Included passage points.</li> <li>d. Included release points (RPs).</li> <li>e. Included AAs (rearward passage).</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 8. Leaders exchange call signs, frequencies, code words, signals, challenges, and passwords to be used at the battle handover line.</p> <p>* 9. The commander and leaders physically locate the following during the reconnaissance:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Located passage routes and lanes.</li> <li>b. Located passage points.</li> <li>c. Located obstacle locations and safety lanes.</li> <li>d. Located RPs.</li> <li>e. Located AAs (for rearward passage).</li> <li>f. Located contact points.</li> <li>g. Located positions and actions of the stationary force during passage.</li> <li>h. Located CS and CSS elements, command posts (CPs), observation posts (OPs), and Javelin and mortar positions.</li> </ul> <p>*10. Both leaders ensure that their reconnaissance and other activities do not reveal the operation to the enemy. Stationary unit activities continue normally throughout the passage and continue after transfer of responsibility for the zone or sector.</p> <p>*11. The leader or his representative checks with other leaders who will be operating in the same or adjacent areas, and they exchange any information that will assist them with their operations.</p> <p>12. The unit arrives and moves into a secure position as designated in the primary coordination meeting by the stationary company commander.</p> <p>*13. The leader issues a contingency plan before moving out to make final coordination.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Briefed the elements on what was happening and what was going to happen.</li> <li>b. Briefed the elements on the ROE and the ROI.</li> <li>c. Confirmed the chain of command.</li> <li>d. Briefed the actions to be taken on contact.</li> <li>e. Briefed the actions to be taken in the absence of the leader.</li> <li>f. Provided the time schedule, suspenses, and any limits on the actions.</li> </ul> <p>*14. The leader completes the final coordination according to task step 5, with the stationary unit leader or his representative at the CP.</p> <p>15. The company moves at the designated time to a covered and concealed position near the contact point.</p> <p>16. The elements link up with the guides that lead the security element from the contact points through the passage lanes and passage points to the RPs.</p> <p><b>NOTE: The movement technique used may make the clearing team unnecessary; for example, the bounding overwatch.</b></p> <p>17. The security element clears the area forward of the RPs to the first covered and concealed position.</p> <p>18. The company moves forward to the RPs after the area is cleared</p> <p>19. The guides identify and account for all vehicles or personnel passing through the passage points, contact points, and RPs.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>20. The executive officer (XO), first sergeant (1SG), or a platoon sergeant (PSG) counts the company through the RPs.</p> <p>21. Both leaders collocate at a point to observe critical areas, make timely decisions during the passage, and facilitate passage of responsibility for battle handover. Passage movement is continuous.</p> <p>22. The company moves beyond the friendly unit final protection fires (FPF). After this, the company may execute a security halt.</p> <p>23. The XO, 1SG, or PSG does not move forward from the RP until the leader is sure that he will not have to withdraw through the passage point.</p> <p>24. The companies move rapidly through the passage lanes to an AA or a new overwatch position.</p> <p>25. The company complies with the ROE and the ROI.</p> <p>26. The company or platoon reenters through the lines.</p> <p>27. The company halts and establishes security.</p> <p><b>NOTE: If in contact with the enemy, the company does not halt. The contact party or guides from the stationary unit lead the unit through the passage points, or long-range recognition signals are used to keep moving.</b></p> <p>28. The leader contacts the forward unit and informs it that the unit is ready to reenter.</p> <p><b>NOTE: The leader may remain outside friendly lines until daylight. If communications are not possible, a reconnaissance and security team contacts an OP before reentry, using the appropriate recognition signals or communication system. The OP then contacts the friendly unit leader. If no communications can be established and no OPs can be found, the leader directs a small security team to reconnoiter for the coordinated contact point.</b></p> <p>29. The leader directs a security team to the contact point when the message is acknowledged.</p> <p>30. The security team establishes contact with the guide using far-and-near recognition signals.</p> <p>31. The security team signals the company forward or goes back and leads the company to the passage point.</p> <p>32. The 1SG or XO and PSG count and identify each platoon as it passes through the passage point.</p> <p>33. The guides lead the unit, without halting, to an AA behind the friendly unit.</p> <p>34. The leader reports to the CP of the forward unit and gives the commander the tactical information in the commander's area of responsibility.</p> <p>35. The leader links up with the platoon in the AA and then leads the company back to a secure area for debriefing.</p> <p>36. The company or platoon conducts stationary unit activities.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established and manned contact points.</li> <li>b. Coordinated with the passing unit and exchanged information listed in task steps 3 through 7.</li> <li>c. Selected guides to link up with the passing unit at the coordinated time.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
d. Provided CS and CSS to the unit, if required. <b>NOTE: Support may include evacuation of casualties, fire support, and resupply of fuel and ammunition.</b>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-0018	Conduct Report Procedures
05-6-0066	Conduct Liaison Operations

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Three Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Three Assault and Obstacle Sections  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Equipment Section

**TASK:** Occupy an Assembly Area (AA) (07-2-1136.05-T02A)  
 (FM 7-10) (FM 24-19) (FM 24-35)  
 (FM 7-7) (FM 7-8) (TC 24-20)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element has been given the order to move and occupy an AA in preparation for combat operations. The enemy has the capability to attack with indirect fire, combined arms support, and platoon-size elements. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The quartering party completes AA preparations and guides the main body of the element into its respective positions no later than the time specified in the operation order (OPORD). Movement into the AA is uninterrupted; elements are not held up outside the AA. The enemy does not surprise the main body of the element. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The element leader organizes a quartering party.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selected personnel.</li> <li>b. Determined the requirement for a combat vehicle and crew based on transportation and security requirements.</li> <li>c. Determined essential equipment needed.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The element leader briefs the quartering party.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified the location of the AA.</li> <li>b. Gave specific instructions upon arrival at the AA.</li> <li>c. Relayed the arrival time of the main body at the AA.</li> <li>d. Identified the march order.</li> <li>e. Relayed nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) conditions.</li> <li>f. Issued a contingency plan in case of enemy contact.</li> <li>g. Established the MOPP level.</li> </ul> </li> <li>3. The quartering party moves along the march route.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained security.</li> <li>b. Reconnoitered the march route from the start point (SP) to the release point (RP) using the digital situational awareness (SA) overlay on the Digital Reconnaissance System (DRS).</li> <li>c. Monitored for NBC contamination.</li> <li>d. Marked obstacles and bypass routes.</li> <li>e. Reported critical information to the quartering party leader.</li> </ul> </li> <li>4. The quartering party moves into the element AA and prepares the area for the arrival of the element.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selected and marked the routes from the RP to the new location.</li> <li>b. Selected and posted guides in time to meet the main body.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>c. Marked entrances, exits, and internal routes.</li> <li>d. Marked vehicle positions where maximum cover, concealment, and dispersion provided 360-degree security.</li> <li>e. Marked or removed mines and obstacles.</li> <li>f. Organized and posted local security.</li> </ul> <p>5. The element occupies the AA.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Moved the covered and concealed quartering party guides to selected or designated areas without halting.</li> <li>b. Established and maintained local security from air and ground forces.</li> </ul> <p>6. The element establishes the AA perimeter.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established the priority of work, which may vary depending on the unit standing operating procedure (SOP) and the mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC).</li> <li>b. Positioned vehicles and crew-served weapons to cover the sectors of fire.</li> <li>c. Established observation posts (OPs) on the critical avenues of approach.</li> <li>d. Established digital and FM communications between all positions using wire communications, if the time and situation permitted.</li> <li>e. Prepared range cards.</li> <li>f. Constructed individual and crew-served fighting positions.</li> <li>g. Cleared the fields of fire.</li> <li>h. Camouflaged positions.</li> <li>i. Emplaced chemical-agent alarms and early warning devices.</li> </ul> <p>7. The element performs internal AA operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducted preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on vehicles and equipment.</li> <li>b. Distributed ammunition, rations, water, supplies, and special equipment.</li> <li>c. Established personal hygiene and field sanitation sites.</li> <li>d. Maintained noise, light, and camouflage discipline.</li> <li>e. Instituted a rest plan for element members and leaders.</li> <li>f. Inspected the AA.</li> </ul> <p>* 8. The element leader coordinates with the elements on the left and the right as a minimum.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established responsibility for overlapping enemy avenues of approach between adjacent elements.</li> <li>b. Exchanged information on the OP locations and element signals.</li> <li>c. Coordinated local counterattacks.</li> <li>d. Developed a defensive plan and forwarded it to higher headquarters (HQ).</li> </ul> <p>* 9. Leaders develop contingency plans.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Developed an evacuation plan.</li> <li>b. Developed a plan of action on enemy contact.</li> </ul> <p>10. The unit conducts rehearsals.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Rehearsed the evacuation plan.</li> <li>b. Rehearsed the plan of action on enemy contact.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
07-2-1301.05-T01A	Conduct a Convoy
07-3-1123.05-T01A	Conduct a Tactical Road March
07-3-C211.05-T01A	Move Tactically
11-5-0121.05-T01A	Provide a Field Cable or Wire System
11-5-1102.05-T01A	Install, Operate, and Maintain a Single-Channel, Ground and Airborne Radio System (SINCGARS) Frequency Hopping (FH) Net

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



**ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Three Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Nine Engineer Squads  
 Company Headquarters Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Equipment Sections  
 Maintenance Section  
 Brigade Engineer Section  
 Obstacle Section  
 Equipment Section  
 Unit Maintenance Section  
 Equipment Platoon  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Three Assault and Obstacle Sections  
 Regimental Engineer Section  
 Combat Medic Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads

**TASK:** Conduct a Convoy (07-2-1301.05-T01A)  
 (FM 55-30) (FM 21-16)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Upon receipt of an operation order (OPORD), the element moves to the new location given in the OPORD and conducts operations at that location. There is a possibility of enemy contact with threat patrols up to platoon and company size. Threat mounted forces have been operating in the area through which the route passes. The company standing operating procedure (SOP) is available and contains movement readiness levels and current loading plans. The convoy may be conducted during daylight or darkness, including blackout conditions. Radio and visual signals will be used for convoy control. The column may conduct halts. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element conducts the convoy and arrives at its new location by the time specified in the OPORD. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The element commander conducts a map reconnaissance using all available position/navigation (POS/NAV) and terrain analysis capabilities, to include space-based assets. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Indicated the start point (SP).</li> <li>b. Identified locations of friendly units.</li> <li>c. Identified potential ambush sites.</li> <li>d. Identified checkpoints (CPs).</li> <li>e. Identified sites to be used for scheduled halts.</li> <li>f. Indicated the release point (RP).</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>2. The reconnaissance party conducts a route reconnaissance using all available POS/NAV and mapping capabilities available.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Dressed in the designated MOPP gear.</li> <li>b. Activated the automatic chemical alarm.</li> <li>c. Monitored radiation-monitoring devices.</li> <li>d. Verified map information.</li> <li>e. Identified the capacities of bridges and underpasses.</li> <li>f. Identified the location of culverts, ferries, fording areas, steep grades, and possible ambush sites.</li> <li>g. Prepared the map overlay.</li> <li>h. Computed the travel time.</li> <li>i. Prepared the strip map.</li> </ul> <p>* 3. The convoy commander coordinates for required support with higher headquarters (HQ), including—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Military police (MP) support.</li> <li>b. Medical support.</li> <li>c. Fire support (FS).</li> <li>d. Engineer support.</li> <li>e. Maintenance contact team support.</li> <li>f. Additional requirements.</li> </ul> <p>4. The element prepares vehicles and equipment.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS).</li> <li>b. Corrected minor deficiencies.</li> <li>c. Reported major deficiencies.</li> <li>d. Hardened vehicles using sandbags or other authorized materials.</li> <li>e. Covered unit identification markings on vehicles and personnel.</li> <li>f. Covered or removed reflective surfaces.</li> <li>g. Placed antennas at their lowest height.</li> <li>h. Turned radio volumes and squelches to their lowest setting, consistent with operational requirements.</li> </ul> <p>* 5. The convoy commander organizes the convoy.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assigned cargo vehicle positions.</li> <li>b. Positioned control vehicles without setting a pattern.</li> <li>c. Assigned recovery vehicle positions.</li> <li>d. Arranged hardened vehicles near the head of the convoy.</li> <li>e. Specified passenger locations.</li> <li>f. Appointed air guards.</li> <li>g. Organized the trail party element.</li> <li>h. Provided vehicle position listings to the trail party leader.</li> </ul> <p>* 6. The convoy commander briefs convoy personnel.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided strip maps to each vehicle driver.</li> <li>b. Identified the convoy chain of command.</li> <li>c. Detailed the convoy route.</li> <li>d. Specified the march rate and the catch-up speed.</li> <li>e. Specified convoy intervals.</li> <li>f. Identified the scheduled halts.</li> <li>g. Briefed accident and breakdown procedures.</li> <li>h. Briefed immediate-action security measures.</li> <li>i. Briefed blackout condition procedures.</li> <li>j. Specified the location of medical support.</li> <li>k. Specified the location of maintenance support.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>l. Briefed communication procedures. m. Specified the location and identification of the destination.</p> <p>7. The convoy crosses the SP. a. Crossed at the specified time. b. Verified that vehicles had crossed the SP. c. Forwarded the SP crossing report to the convoy commander when the entire unit had passed the SP.</p> <p>* 8. The convoy commander provides convoy information to higher HQ. a. Reported the SP crossing time. b. Reported the CP clearance, when crossed. c. Pointed out data that conflicted with the maps. d. Used the correct signal operation instructions (SOI) codes in all transmissions. e. Reported the RP crossing time.</p> <p>9. The convoy maintains march discipline. a. Maintained the designated march speed. b. Maintained proper vehicle intervals. c. Crossed CPs as scheduled. d. Reacted correctly to the convoy commander's signals. e. Maintained security throughout the movement and during halts.</p> <p>10. The company conducts a scheduled halt. a. Stopped the column at the prescribed time. b. Maintained prescribed vehicular intervals. c. Moved vehicles off the road. d. Established local security. e. Performed PMCS. f. Inspected vehicle loads. g. Departed at the specified time.</p> <p>11. The company conducts an unscheduled halt. a. Alerted the march column. b. Reported the stoppage to higher HQ. c. Maintained prescribed vehicular intervals. d. Established local security. e. Reported the resumption of the march to higher HQ.</p> <p>12. The convoy moves under blackout conditions. a. Provided a visual adjustment period. b. Prepared vehicles for blackout conditions. c. Maintained prescribed vehicle distances. d. Wore night vision goggles (specified personnel). e. Wore regular eye protection goggles. f. Used ground guides during poor visibility periods.</p> <p>13. The trail party recovers disabled vehicles. a. Inspected the disabled vehicles. b. Repaired the disabled vehicles, when possible. c. Towed the vehicles, if necessary. d. Reported the status of the vehicles to the convoy commander.</p> <p>14. The convoy moves through urban areas. a. Identified weight, height, and width restrictions. b. Used close-column formation.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Obeyed traffic control directions. d. Used direction guides at critical intersections.  15. The convoy crosses the RP. a. Crossed at the specified time. b. Verified that the vehicles had crossed the RP. c. Forwarded the crossing report to higher HQ.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-6001	Request a Standard Geospatial Product
05-3-1020	Perform a Technical Reconnaissance
19-1-1102	Coordinate Route Reconnaissance and Surveillance
19-1-1201	Prepare Traffic Control Plan

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Three Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Nine Engineer Squads  
 Company Headquarters Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Equipment Sections  
 Maintenance Section  
 Brigade Engineer Section  
 Obstacle Section  
 Equipment Section  
 Unit Maintenance Section  
 Equipment Platoon  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Three Assault and Obstacle Sections  
 Regimental Engineer Section  
 Combat Medic Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads

**TASK:** Conduct a Tactical Road March (07-3-1123.05-T01A)  
 (FM 7-10) (FM 7-8)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is ordered to conduct a tactical road march. The enemy (no larger than a squad or platoon size) can assault mounted or dismounted and employ indirect fires or air support. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element crosses the start point (SP), follows the prescribed route without deviation (unless required by enemy action or at the direction of higher headquarters [HQ]), and crosses the release point (RP), all as specified in the order. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The element leader issues a warning order (WARNO) to subordinate leaders.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Included enough information for subordinate elements to prepare for the mission.</li> <li>b. Gave the WARNO immediately after being alerted to the mission.</li> <li>c. Included movement instructions if the movement was to be initiated before the operation order (OPORD) was issued.</li> <li>d. Addressed items not covered in the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).</li> <li>e. Specified the time and location to issue the OPORD.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The element leader completes the plan and issues the march order.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided a statement of the enemy situation, weather, and visibility conditions.</li> <li>b. Identified the route, the SP, the RP, critical points, and other control points.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Provided the order of movement, the order of march, the march rate, and the distance to maintain between units.</p> <p>d. Established security tasks for subordinate elements, to include all-around security and air guard coverage for the entire element.</p> <p>e. Addressed contingencies for actions on enemy contact.</p> <p><b>NOTE: Plans must include the reaction to an enemy ambush; indirect fire; an air attack; a nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) attack; and sniper fires.</b></p> <p>f. Provided the Soldiers with load guides.</p> <p>g. Ensured that subordinate leaders briefed their plans.</p> <p>3. The element conducts the necessary resupply of water, rations, ammunition, batteries, and special-issue items.</p> <p>a. Inspected personnel and vehicles for the proper load and equipment and their readiness to move.</p> <p>b. Completed a communications check using digital and FM radios to report the readiness of the unit element to move.</p> <p>4. The element conducts the road movement.</p> <p>a. Crossed the SP at the designated time.</p> <p>b. Maintained personnel and vehicle intervals and the march rate specified in the order or the unit SOP.</p> <p>c. Followed the prescribed route.</p> <p>5. The element maintains local security throughout the movement.</p> <p>a. Maintained all-around observation at all times, to include air guards.</p> <p>b. Oriented as directed to establish local security.</p> <p>6. The unit reports and reacts to enemy contact using the Digital Reconnaissance System (DRS).</p> <p>a. Reported and reacted according to directions in the OPORD.</p> <p>b. Reported and reacted according to the unit SOP.</p> <p>7. The unit halts.</p> <p>a. Conducted the halt at regular intervals according to the unit SOP (as the tactical situation permitted) to rest the troops, adjust and redistribute the equipment, and perform foot hygiene.</p> <p>b. Positioned the element to provide all-around security.</p> <p>c. Reported all halts to the next higher HQ using the digital reporting procedures on the mobile subscriber radiotelephone terminal (MSRT).</p> <p>d. Positioned vehicles in a herringbone formation.</p> <p>e. Dismounted personnel to provide local security.</p> <p>f. Checked the condition of personnel and equipment.</p> <p>g. Coordinated with the adjacent unit.</p> <p>h. Reported the status to higher HQ using the digital reporting procedures on the MSRT.</p> <p>* 8. The leader controls the unit.</p> <p>a. Used visual, messenger, digital, or radio signals for control throughout the movement.</p> <p>b. Reported control measures as directed by the SOP or the order using the DRS.</p> <p>c. Used control measures from the order, and modified them as needed.</p> <p>9. The element arrives at the RP at the time specified in the order.</p> <p>a. Met the quartering party guide, if one was designated.</p> <p>b. Passed through the RP without halting.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Reported the crossing to higher HQ using the digital reporting procedures on the MSRT.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-0018	Conduct Report Procedures
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)
05-3-3001	React to Contact
05-3-3012	React to a Direct-Fire or Antitank Guided Missile (ATGM)
07-1-1923.05-T01A	React to Indirect Fire
07-3-1112.05-T01A	React to an Ambush
07-3-1135.05-T01A	Conduct Actions at Danger Areas
09-2-0337.05-T01A	React to Unexploded Ordnance (UXO)
12-1-0403.05-T01A	Report Casualties

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Three Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Nine Engineer Squads  
 Company Headquarters Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Equipment Sections  
 Obstacle Section  
 Equipment Section  
 Equipment Platoon  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Three Assault and Obstacle Sections

**TASK:** Conduct Actions at Danger Areas (07-3-1135.05-T01A)  
 (FM 7-8) (ARTEP 7-8-DRILL) (FM 3-21.71)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is part of a larger dismounted moving force that encounters a danger area that cannot be bypassed. The platoon must provide its own security. Rules of engagement (ROE) have been published. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element prevents the enemy from surprising the main body. The element moves all personnel and equipment across the danger area. The platoon prevents decisive engagement by the enemy. The United States (U.S.) forces comply with the ROE. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The element leader directs the platoon to take action on encountering a danger area.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the point man signaled "danger area" and that it was relayed throughout the platoon.</li> <li>b. Halted the platoon and maintained local security.</li> <li>c. Moved forward to the point man, and confirmed the danger area.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The element leader directs the lead squad to reconnoiter the danger area and makes an estimate based on information received.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Directed the route for the platoon if the danger area could be bypassed.</li> <li>b. Controlled the crossing of the danger area with minimum time spent in or near the danger area.                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Informed all squad leaders of the situation.</li> <li>(2) Designated the nearside and farside rally points.</li> <li>(3) Directed the positioning of the nearside security team.</li> <li>(4) Selected a crossing point that provided cover and concealment.</li> <li>(5) Assigned the farside security team.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. The element leader selects the farside clearing method based on observable terrain. The secured area must be large enough to allow full deployment of the remainder of the platoon.</li> </ul>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>4. The nearside security team provides security.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Observed to the flanks.</li> <li>b. Overwatched the crossing of the farside security team.</li> <li>c. Warned of enemy approach before the main body was engaged.</li> </ul> <p>5. The farside team reconnoiters the farside.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Crossed the danger area once the nearside security team was in place.</li> <li>b. Reconnoiters the farside and ensured that any terrain (small hills, folds, or streambeds) that might have concealed enemy positions was clear of the enemy.</li> <li>c. Established an observation post (OP) forward of the cleared area.</li> <li>d. Signaled to the squad leader that the area was clear; the message was relayed to the platoon leader.</li> </ul> <p>6. The element crosses the danger area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used the method designated by the platoon leader: line (all at once), wedge (file), small groups, or individually.</li> <li>b. Used nearside security to overwatch the platoon crossing.</li> <li>c. Crossed the danger area quickly and quietly.</li> <li>d. Executed Battle Drill 2, React to Contact (Army Training and Evaluation Program [ARTEP] 7-8-DRILL) if contact was made.</li> <li>e. Established local security once across the danger area.</li> <li>f. Completed the crossing with the nearside security team crossing the danger area and regaining its positions in the formation.</li> </ul> <p>7. The platoon continues the mission.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Accounted for all members.</li> <li>b. Resumed tactical movement.</li> <li>c. Maintained the proper formation and personnel intervals.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
052-192-1021	Locate Mines by Visual Means
052-193-1013	Neutralize Booby Traps

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Three Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Nine Engineer Squads  
 Company Headquarters Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Equipment Sections  
 Maintenance Section  
 Brigade Engineer Section  
 Obstacle Section  
 Equipment Section  
 Unit Maintenance Section  
 Equipment Platoon  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Three Assault and Obstacle Sections  
 Regimental Engineer Section  
 Combat Medic Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads

**TASK:** Move Tactically (07-3-C211.05-T01A)  
 (FM 7-7) (FM 3-21.71) (FM 7-10)  
 (FM 7-8)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is required to move cross-country, mounted or dismounted. The threat may consist of up to a motorized rifle company. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element arrives at its destination without being surprised by the opposing forces (OPFOR). The element retains its ability to move. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The element leader assigns areas of responsibility (AORs) during the movement. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assigned all squads to an AOR.</li> <li>b. Directed squad leaders to assign individual AORs.</li> <li>c. Ensured that there was all-around coverage of the platoon, including air guard.</li> </ul> * 2. The element leader designates a route for the movement. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that there was concealment from ground, air, and space observation.</li> <li>b. Ensured that there was cover from the direct fire of known enemy positions.</li> </ul> 3. The squads use a wedge formation during the movement. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Formed one or two wedges based on mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) factors.</li> <li>b. Closed the wedges during limited visibility so that visibility was maintained between individuals, teams, and squads. Maintained the rate of movement.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Opened the wedges as obstructions to the movement and to diminish control.</p> <p>* 4. The element leader designates a movement technique to use that is based on METT-TC factors.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Designated a traveling-movement technique when enemy contact was not likely.</li> <li>b. Designated a traveling-overwatch-movement technique when enemy contact was possible.</li> <li>c. Designated a bounding-overwatch-movement technique when enemy contact was likely.</li> </ol> <p>5. The element performs a traveling-movement technique.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained fire teams about 20 meters apart when dismounted.</li> <li>b. Moved the squads on a column axis about 20 meters apart when dismounted.</li> <li>c. Moved in a column formation, staggered laterally, with 50 to 100 meters between vehicles when mounted.</li> <li>d. Reported obstacles, enemy contact, or danger areas to the element leader.</li> </ol> <p>6. The element performs a traveling-overwatch-movement technique.  <b>NOTE: When dismounted, the lead element uses a traveling-overwatch-movement technique, and the trailing squads use a traveling-movement technique.</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Increased the distance between the lead squad and the main body of the platoon by 50 to 100 meters.</li> <li>b. Conducted the movement (mounted) with the lead vehicle 100 to 400 meters in front of the rest of the element; other vehicles were 50 to 100 meters apart.</li> <li>c. Reported obstacles, enemy contact, or danger areas to the platoon leader.</li> </ol> <p>7. The element performs a bounding-overwatch-movement technique.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducted bounds that did not exceed visual overwatch.</li> <li>b. Conducted bounds that stayed within the maximum effective range of overwatching weapons.</li> </ol> <p>8. The bounding squad moves.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Signaled to the platoon leader that it was beginning its movement.</li> <li>b. Used a covered and concealed route, when available, for its bound.</li> <li>c. Employed a point man or buddy team as far forward as visual contact with the rest of the squad allowed.</li> <li>d. Moved as quickly as possible while maintaining operations security (OPSEC).</li> <li>e. Moved in a way that did not mask the fires of the overwatching element.</li> <li>f. Established an overwatch position upon completion of its bound to overwatch the succeeding bound.</li> <li>g. Informed the element leader that it had finished its bound and was ready to overwatch.</li> <li>h. Alerted the element leader and the overwatching element of any enemy that was detected, any obstacles that were encountered, or any danger areas.</li> </ol> <p>9. The overwatch squad provides overwatch.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Occupied a position that allowed observation and fire to cover the movement of the bounding squad to its next overwatch position.</li> <li>b. Oriented the weapons on likely enemy positions.</li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Maintained continuous observation of the bounding squad, its route, and any terrain that could influence the route.</p> <p>d. Suppressed enemy units so that the bounding element was not fixed.</p> <p>e. Alerted the bounding squad and the element leader of any enemy that it detected.</p> <p>f. Prepared to bound when the bounding team assumed the overwatch position.</p> <p>10. The element maintains security during movement.</p> <p>a. Maintained visual contact at a normal interval of 10 meters (the interval automatically expands and contracts based on terrain and visibility).</p> <p>b. Maintained noise and light discipline.</p> <p>c. Observed sectors of fires to avoid any enemy that was approaching the platoon within 35 meters and any aircraft that was attacking the platoon without warning.</p> <p>*11. Leaders use control measures during the movement.</p> <p>a. Positioned themselves where they could control the movement.</p> <p>b. Positioned key weapons.</p> <p>c. Used visual signals and oral commands to control the movement.</p> <p>*12. The element leader controls movement of the elements.</p> <p>a. Assessed the terrain continuously for potential danger areas.</p> <p>b. Used hand-and-arm signals once contact was made.</p> <p>c. Used visual and audio signals once contact was made.</p> <p>*13. The element leader knows the locations of all elements at all times.</p> <p>a. Expressed the location of the platoon as a 6-digit coordinate or by using current operational graphics.</p> <p>b. Knew the location of all the elements including the leading, flanking, and trailing company elements with accuracy of plus or minus 100 meters.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Three Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Nine Engineer Squads  
 Company Headquarters Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Equipment Sections  
 Maintenance Section  
 Brigade Engineer Section  
 Company  
 Obstacle Section  
 Equipment Section  
 Unit Maintenance Section  
 Equipment Platoon  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Three Assault and Obstacle Sections  
 Regimental Engineer Section  
 Combat Medic Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads

**TASK:** Conduct a Radiological, Chemical, or Biological Reconnaissance or Survey (03-2-3008.05-T01A)

**ITERATION:** 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is conducting operations in an area where nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) weapons have been initiated. The commander needs to determine if there are (or is information on) radiological, chemical, or biological hazards in the area of operational concern. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The commander and operations section plan a reconnaissance or survey mission for the company organic reconnaissance element. The plan is issued with two-thirds planning time remaining for the element. The plan must be detailed and feasible for the element to perform. If the situation and location permit, the commander supervises the preparation and execution.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The element leader receives and analyzes the mission and identifies all unit tasks.</li> <li>* 2. The element leader issues a warning order (WARNO) to subordinate leaders as soon as possible.</li> <li>* 3. The element leader and the operations section make a tentative plan based on mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) factors.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Planned reconnaissance or survey techniques, locations, turn-back dose rates (radiological missions), decontamination after the reconnaissance or survey, fire support, reporting procedures, logistical support, and leader and signal information.</li> <li>b. Coordinated for intelligence information, air- or indirect-fire support, and medical support.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Coordinated the element plan with units in the area of operations, if necessary.</p> <p>d. Drew, stocked, or coordinated petroleum, oils, and lubricants (POL); ammunition; MOPP gear; Classes II and VII support; and maintenance, recovery, or Class IX support for the platoon.</p> <p>* 4. The element leader orders units to start movement, if necessary.</p> <p>* 5. The element leader reconnoiters the operations area and performs a map reconnaissance as a minimum.</p> <p>* 6. The element leader completes the plan and issues the operation order (OPORD) with two-thirds of the total planning time remaining for the platoon.</p> <p>* 7. The element leader supervises preparations of the reconnaissance or survey if the location of operations permits. Communications, supply, and maintenance sections assist the platoons with priority maintenance and resupply support.</p> <p>8. The element conducts a tactical road march or executes a traveling movement to the reconnaissance or survey site. The reconnaissance or survey element—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Executed a mounted movement technique (traveling, traveling overwatch, or bounding overwatch) or reconnoitered dismounted, as the situation and/or mission required.</li> <li>b. Detected and marked the contaminated area, ensuring that marking signs were facing friendly areas.</li> <li>c. Detected uncontaminated areas and routes.</li> <li>d. Selected decontamination sites with a water source, cover and concealment, and the physical capacity to hold a site if required to perform reconnaissance for decontamination sites as a mission.</li> <li>e. Determined the limits of the contaminated area.</li> <li>f. Detected the types of chemical agents or specific levels and types of radiological contamination as required by the mission.</li> </ul> <p>9. The headquarters (HQ) (if prescribed by the mission) assists the reconnaissance or survey unit recovery operations.</p> <p>*10. The element leader or operations officer (if prescribed by the mission) debriefs the returning reconnaissance or survey units and forwards the acquired information to higher HQ in NBC 4 or NBC 5 format, if required.</p> <p>*11. The radiological element leaders record, collate, and submit individual and unit radiation exposure status (RES) readings to higher HQ.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-3-1008	Conduct Minesweeping Operations
05-3-1220	Conduct Fire and Maneuver Operations
05-3-3006	Establish Jobsite Security
07-2-1125.05-T01A	Conduct Passage of Lines (Passing/Stationary)
07-2-1301.05-T01A	Conduct a Convoy
07-3-C211.05-T01A	Move Tactically

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Three Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Nine Engineer Squads  
 Company Headquarters Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Equipment Sections  
 Maintenance Section  
 Brigade Engineer Section  
 Obstacle Section  
 Equipment Section  
 Unit Maintenance Section  
 Equipment Platoon  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Three Assault and Obstacle Sections  
 Regimental Engineer Section  
 Combat Medic Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads

**TASK:** Prepare for Operations Under Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical (NBC) Conditions (03-3-C201.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-11.11) (FM 3-11.4) (FM 3-3)

**ITERATION:** 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Higher headquarters (HQ) informs the unit that opposing forces (OPFOR) are conducting NBC warfare in the area. NBC equipment has been issued. Soldiers carry protective masks with their load-carrying equipment (LCE), having mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) gear readily available (within the work area). This task is always performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element uses collective protection or takes measures to limit the effects of NBC attacks and/or contamination and continues the mission.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The element leader checks accountability and serviceability of NBC defense equipment. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that NBC detection equipment was issued to trained operators.</li> <li>b. Ensured that NBC detection equipment was employed and operating within 15 minutes.</li> <li>c. Identified equipment shortages.</li> <li>d. Took action to obtain replacement equipment.</li> </ul> 2. The element assumes MOPP levels as directed by higher HQ or as the NBC situation dictates, and is prepared to operate at the time specified in the operation order (OPORD). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Donned masks and hoods within 15 seconds.</li> <li>b. Assumed MOPP4 within 8 minutes.</li> </ul> 3. Soldiers take actions to protect themselves against an NBC attack. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Set up and used collective protective shelters (if available).</li> </ul>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Prepared protective shelters, such as foxholes with overhead cover.  * 4. The element leader adjusts the MOPP level using MOPP analysis. a. Received and analyzed the enemy NBC threat capability and considered the following: (1) Was the unit targeted or could it be targeted? (2) Did the enemy have the capability to deliver chemical or nuclear weapons? (3) When or where could the enemy most likely deliver the chemical or nuclear weapons? b. Collected and analyzed weather data and considered the following: (1) Was it day or night? (2) What were current weather conditions (see the chemical downwind message [CDM] or weather report)? (3) What are weather conditions 2, 4, and 6 hours in the future going to be (see the CDM or weather report)? c. Analyzed the element status and mission and considered the following: (1) What was the mission? (2) What was the work rate? (3) How long did the work take? (4) What were the training and physical levels of the unit? (5) How long did it take to warn all the Soldiers of an NBC attack?		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Three Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Nine Engineer Squads  
 Company Headquarters Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Equipment Sections  
 Maintenance Section  
 Brigade Engineer Section  
 Obstacle Section  
 Equipment Section  
 Unit Maintenance Section  
 Equipment Platoon  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Three Assault and Obstacle Sections  
 Regimental Engineer Section  
 Combat Medic Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads

**TASK:** Prepare for a Chemical Attack (03-3-C202.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-11.11) (FM 3-11.4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Opposing forces (OPFOR) are conducting chemical warfare or intelligence indicates that its use is imminent. Higher headquarters (HQ) directs the implementation of actions to minimize casualties and limit contamination. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Unit personnel assume mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4 within 8 minutes and complete preparation efforts before the attack or its effects reach their location. The element protects its personnel, equipment, food, and water and continues its mission. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in MOPP4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The unit leader issues a warning order.</p> <p>2. Unit personnel start defensive preparations for a chemical attack.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assumed MOPP4 within 8 minutes after notification.</li> <li>b. Attached M9 detector paper to their right arms, left wrists, their right or left ankles, and the vehicles.</li> <li>c. Conducted MOPP field sanitation procedures.</li> <li>d. Emplaced chemical-agent alarms upwind of their position.</li> </ul> <p>3. Unit personnel prepare fighting positions or shelters.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used existing, natural, or man-made facilities (such as caves, ditches, culverts, and tunnels) as fighting positions and shelters.</li> <li>b. Dug fighting positions and bunkers with overhead cover.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: Fighting positions should have overhead cover consisting of a minimum of 18 inches of soil, if time permits.</b></p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
4. The noncommissioned officers (NCOs) check personnel and fighting positions. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that personnel were at MOPP4.</li> <li>b. Ensured that individual and element fighting positions were hardened with sandbags and overhead cover.</li> </ul> * 5. The unit leader takes additional actions consistent with the tactical situation by increasing, decreasing, or modifying the MOPP level.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-2-3000	Control Construction of Survivability Positions

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Three Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Nine Engineer Squads  
 Company Headquarters Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Equipment Sections  
 Maintenance Section  
 Brigade Engineer Section  
 Obstacle Section  
 Equipment Section  
 Unit Maintenance Section  
 Equipment Platoon  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Three Assault and Obstacle Sections  
 Regimental Engineer Section  
 Combat Medic Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads

**TASK:** Respond to a Chemical Attack (03-3-C203.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-11.4) (FM 3-11.11) (FM 3-3)  
 (FM 3-5)

**ITERATION:** 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit is deployed in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 2. Intelligence indicates that opposing forces (OPFOR) have initiated chemical warfare. The automatic alarm sounds or the detector paper changes color, causing the unit to react. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The Soldiers sound the alarm (vocal or nonvocal), immediately assume MOPP4, and use available shelter to prevent further exposure to contamination. The unit reacts to the chemical alarm within 9 seconds.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. Unit leaders ensure that Soldiers react to the sound of the chemical-agent alarm or recognize the indicators of a chemical or biological attack. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Sounded the alarm (vocal or nonvocal).</li> <li>b. Ensured that Soldiers put on their protective masks within 9 seconds.</li> <li>c. Assumed MOPP4 as soon as possible.</li> <li>d. Sought additional shelter, if available.</li> <li>e. Administered a nerve agent antidote (buddy aid) to other Soldiers with symptoms of nerve agent poisoning (if applicable).</li> <li>f. Administered nerve agent antidotes to selves (if applicable).</li> <li>g. Ensured that each Soldier followed protective measures.</li> </ul> 2. Soldiers take additional protective measures. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Protected exposed equipment and supplies.</li> <li>b. Monitored the area by testing it with detector kits.</li> <li>c. Applied prevention procedures, such as marking contaminated areas.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
3. Soldiers conduct immediate decontamination. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducted skin decontamination.</li> <li>b. Wiped down personal equipment with M291 or M280 decontamination kits.</li> <li>c. Conducted operator spray down of equipment.</li> </ul> * 4. Unit leaders initiate unmasking procedures and report to higher headquarters (HQ). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that casualties were provided medical care.</li> <li>b. Reported casualties.</li> <li>c. Submitted a nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) 1 report to higher HQ immediately.</li> <li>d. Continued the mission or requested movement to an alternate location.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
12-1-0403.05-T01A	Report Casualties

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Three Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Nine Engineer Squads  
 Company Headquarters Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Equipment Sections  
 Maintenance Section  
 Brigade Engineer Section  
 Obstacle Section  
 Equipment Section  
 Unit Maintenance Section  
 Equipment Platoon  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Three Assault and Obstacle Sections  
 Regimental Engineer Section  
 Combat Medic Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads

**TASK:** Prepare for a Friendly Nuclear Strike (03-3-C205.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-11.4) (FM 3-3)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit receives a strike warning message from higher headquarters (HQ) directing specific actions to be implemented. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit completes preparations within 30 minutes of a friendly nuclear-strike warning. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The designated radio operator acknowledges the strike warning message. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Authenticated the call.</li> <li>b. Acknowledged the warning by returning the message.</li> </ul> * 2. The unit leader issues a warning order. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Warned subordinate and affected units.</li> <li>b. Ensured that subordinates executed actions as directed.</li> </ul> 3. Soldiers do the following before detonation occurs: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Placed vehicles and equipment for the best terrain shielding (for example, hill masses, slopes, culverts, or depressions).</li> <li>b. Disconnected nonessential electronic equipment.</li> <li>c. Tied down essential antennas.</li> <li>d. Took down nonessential antennas and antenna leads.</li> <li>e. Improved shelters, considering blast, thermal, and radiation effects.</li> </ul> <b>NOTE: Add sandbags to shelters, foxholes, or tents in the direction of the strike. Cover openings or position them away from the strike.</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>f. Zeroed dosimeters.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
g. Secured loose, flammable, or explosive items and food or water containers to protect them from nuclear weapons.  4. Digital units ensure that the systems were prepared according to the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Three Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Nine Engineer Squads  
 Company Headquarters Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Equipment Sections  
 Maintenance Section  
 Brigade Engineer Section  
 Obstacle Section  
 Equipment Section  
 Unit Maintenance Section  
 Equipment Platoon  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Three Assault and Obstacle Sections  
 Regimental Engineer Section  
 Combat Medic Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads

**TASK:** Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (03-3-C206.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-11.4) (FM 3-11) (FM 3-3)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit receives notice that a nuclear attack is probable and must initiate actions to minimize casualties and damage. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit hardens and shields positions and equipment and conducts periodic monitoring. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The unit leader issues a warning order to subordinate units, and ensures that all Soldiers understand the order.  2. The unit begins defensive preparation for a nuclear attack. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Placed vehicles and equipment where the terrain shielding was best (for example, hill masses, slopes, culverts, and depressions).</li> <li>b. Turned off and disconnected nonessential electronic equipment according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).</li> <li>c. Tied down essential antennas.</li> <li>d. Took down nonessential antenna leads according to the unit SOP or other guidance.</li> <li>e. Improved shelters with consideration for blast, thermal, and radiation effects.</li> <li>f. Zeroed dosimeters.</li> <li>g. Secured loose, flammable, or explosive items and food or water containers to protect them from nuclear-weapons effects.</li> <li>h. Took cover in hardened shelters (if available).</li> </ul>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
i. Used field-expedient shelters.  3. The unit takes additional actions consistent with the tactical situation. a. Continued periodic monitoring. b. Reported all dose rate and dosimeter readings to higher headquarters (HQ).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-0018	Conduct Report Procedures

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Three Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Nine Engineer Squads  
 Company Headquarters Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Equipment Sections  
 Maintenance Section  
 Brigade Engineer Section  
 Obstacle Section  
 Equipment Section  
 Unit Maintenance Section  
 Equipment Platoon  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Three Assault and Obstacle Sections  
 Regimental Engineer Section  
 Combat Medic Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads

**TASK:** Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area (03-3-C208.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-3) (FM 3-11.11) (FM 3-11.4)

**ITERATION:** 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit receives orders to cross a radiologically contaminated area. The approximate boundaries of the area are known or marked. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit crosses the contaminated area by the shortest, fastest route available without incurring radiation casualties or spreading contamination.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. Unit leaders prepare for the crossing. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Directed individuals to cover their noses and mouths with handkerchiefs or clean rags, roll their sleeves down, and wear gloves.</li> <li>b. Received operational-exposure guidance (OEG) from the commander (turn-back dose rate).</li> <li>c. Ensured that radiac equipment operators checked the instruments.</li> </ul> 2. The unit prepares for the crossing. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified extra shielding requirements (for example, used sandbags on the vehicle floor).</li> <li>b. Placed externally stored equipment inside the vehicle or covered it with available material.</li> <li>c. Started continuous monitoring.</li> </ul> 3. The unit crosses the area. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Avoided stirring up dust.</li> <li>b. Kept out of the dust cloud by increasing the intervals and distances between vehicles.</li> </ul>		

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO-GO</b>
c. Conducted movement as rapidly as possible (tracked vehicles should have been buttoned up).  4. The unit performs immediate decontamination of personnel and equipment. a. Checked for casualties. b. Reported casualties. c. Conducted necessary decontamination. d. Evacuated casualties. e. Continued the mission.		

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1M</b>	<b>2M</b>	<b>3M</b>	<b>4M</b>	<b>5M</b>		<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
08-2-0314.05-T01A	Treat Unit Casualties (for Units With Medical Treatment Personnel)
08-2-C316.05-T01A	Transport Casualties (for Units Without Medical Treatment Personnel)
12-1-0403.05-T01A	Report Casualties

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Three Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Nine Engineer Squads  
 Company Headquarters Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Equipment Sections  
 Maintenance Section  
 Brigade Engineer Section  
 Obstacle Section  
 Equipment Section  
 Unit Maintenance Section  
 Equipment Platoon  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Three Assault and Obstacle Sections  
 Regimental Engineer Section  
 Combat Medic Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads

**TASK:** React to Smoke Operations (03-3-C209.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-50)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit encounters friendly or enemy smoke while conducting operations. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit exploits the threat smoke or employs friendly smoke to conceal its own activities and continues the mission. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The unit does not allow smoke to impede the performance of the mission.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed its mission in the presence of smoke.</li> <li>b. Exploited threat smoke to conceal its own movements.</li> <li>c. Moved to alternate positions to reduce the effects of the smoke used by the threat.</li> <li>d. Considered using countersmoke to conceal their own activities.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. The unit employs organic smoke grenade launchers, smoke pots, and smoke hand grenades.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated smoke operations with the unit commander or the supported unit.</li> <li>b. Determined the wind direction and speed.</li> <li>c. Determined where to release the smoke and where it would travel.</li> <li>d. Determined the duration of the smoke operations.</li> <li>e. Determined the effects of weather conditions on the smoke plan.</li> <li>f. Ensured that the smoke covered an area larger than the unit position.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
g. Requested smoke support from other units (if organic systems would not accomplish the task).  3. The unit uses target acquisition and guidance systems. a. Determined what available target acquisition and guidance systems were effective in the smoke. b. Requested and used target acquisition and guidance systems that were effective in the smoke.  * 4. The noncommissioned officer in charge (NCOIC) requests a resupply of smoke munitions when required. a. Requested smoke grenades and smoke pots. b. Distributed smoke grenades and smoke pots.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-2-7003	Receive and Distribute Throughput Supplies

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Three Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Nine Engineer Squads  
 Company Headquarters Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Equipment Sections  
 Maintenance Section  
 Brigade Engineer Section  
 Obstacle Section  
 Equipment Section  
 Unit Maintenance Section  
 Equipment Platoon  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Three Assault and Obstacle Sections  
 Regimental Engineer Section  
 Combat Medic Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads

**TASK:** Respond to the Residual Effects of a Nuclear Attack (03-3-C222.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-11.4) (FM 3-11.11) (FM 3-3)

**ITERATION:** 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit is located within a predicted fallout area. The mission does not allow movement from the predicted fallout area. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit takes actions to minimize exposure to residual radiation.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. Unit leaders prepare the unit for fallout.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that individuals covered their noses and mouths with handkerchiefs or clean rags, rolled their sleeves down, and wore gloves.</li> <li>b. Covered equipment; munitions; petroleum, oils, and lubricants (POL); and food and water containers or placed them inside shelters or vehicles.</li> <li>c. Used shelters, closed vehicles, or available shielding to protect personnel from fallout.</li> <li>d. Ensured that continuous monitoring was maintained using available nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) detection and identification equipment.</li> </ul> <p>2. Unit leaders designate personnel to monitor fallout.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained total-dose information using available total-dose instruments.</li> <li>b. Ensured that exposure was minimized while the commander determined if relocation to a clean area was necessary or possible.</li> <li>c. Calculated the optimum time of exit.</li> <li>d. Sent NBC 4 reports to higher headquarters (HQ) using secure means when possible.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 3. The unit leader develops a contingency plan. a. Used guidance from higher HQ based on the mission and previous radiation exposure. b. Planned for rotation of individuals to minimize exposure.		
* 4. The unit leader submits reports according to unit standing operating procedure (SOP).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

\*\* indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-0018	Conduct Report Procedures
12-1-0403.05-T01A	Report Casualties

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Three Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Nine Engineer Squads  
 Company Headquarters Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Equipment Sections  
 Maintenance Section  
 Brigade Engineer Section  
 Obstacle Section  
 Equipment Section  
 Unit Maintenance Section  
 Equipment Platoon  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Three Assault and Obstacle Sections  
 Regimental Engineer Section  
 Combat Medic Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads

**TASK:** Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (03-3-C223.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-11.4) (FM 3-11.11) (FM 3-3)

**ITERATION:** 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Soldiers observe a brilliant flash of light and/or a mushroom-shaped cloud. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit takes action to minimize exposure to the initial effects of a nuclear detonation in its area and continues its mission.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. Soldiers take immediate protective actions in response to a nuclear attack. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Without warning, Soldiers—                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Closed their eyes immediately.</li> <li>(2) Dropped to the ground in a prone position, with their heads toward the blast (if in the hatch of an armored vehicle, immediately dropped down inside the vehicle).</li> <li>(3) Kept their heads and their faces down and helmets on.</li> <li>(4) Remained in a prone position until the blast wave passed and all debris stopped falling.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. With warning, Soldiers—                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Identified the best available shelter, such as fighting positions or inside shelters.</li> <li>(2) Moved to the shelter.</li> <li>(3) Took actions to protect themselves from the blast and radiation.</li> <li>(4) Kept clothing loosely fitted and their headgear on at all times.</li> <li>(5) Protected their eyes and minimized exposed skin areas.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 2. Leaders reorganize the unit.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reestablished the chain of command.</li> <li>b. Reestablished communications.</li> <li>c. Submitted a nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) 1 report to higher headquarters (HQ).</li> <li>d. Treated casualties.</li> <li>e. Reported casualties.</li> <li>f. Evacuated casualties.</li> <li>g. Evaluated facilities for protection from residual radiation.</li> <li>h. Implemented continuous monitoring.</li> <li>i. Submitted a damage assessment to higher HQ.</li> <li>j. Initiated an area damage control plan, as required.</li> <li>k. Extinguished all fires.</li> </ul> <p>* 3. Leaders ensure that weapon systems are operational.</p> <p>4. Soldiers right overturned vehicles.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Checked for loss of coolant, fuel, and battery fluids.</li> <li>b. Performed operator's maintenance to restore moderately damaged vehicles to combat use.</li> </ul> <p>5. Soldiers improve cover.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Chose dense covering material.</li> <li>b. Covered in depth.</li> <li>c. Provided strong support.</li> <li>d. Covered as much of the opening as practical.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-0031	Control Area Damage Control (ADC) Operations
05-2-0018	Conduct Report Procedures
08-2-C316.05-T01A	Transport Casualties (for Units Without Medical Treatment Personnel)
12-1-0403.05-T01A	Report Casualties

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Three Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Nine Engineer Squads  
 Company Headquarters Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Equipment Sections  
 Maintenance Section  
 Brigade Engineer Section  
 Obstacle Section  
 Equipment Section  
 Unit Maintenance Section  
 Equipment Platoon  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Three Assault and Obstacle Sections  
 Regimental Engineer Section  
 Combat Medic Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads

**TASK:** Conduct Operational Decontamination (03-3-C224.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-5) (FM 3-11.11)

**ITERATION:** 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit is operating in a contaminated environment and/or is contaminated. Performance degradation from mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4 is increasing, and protective gear is in danger of penetration by contamination. Time and the tactical situation permit the element to conduct operational decontamination. Replacement protective gear is available for each Soldier. For a nonsupported decontamination, element decontamination equipment and supplies are available and operational. For a supported decontamination, a decontamination element is available, operational, and tasked to provide decontamination support. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit decontaminates its individual gear and conducts MOPP gear exchange (using the buddy system) without sustaining additional casualties from nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) contamination. The unit limits the contamination transfer hazard by removing gross chemical contamination on equipment and minimizes contamination on Soldiers according to Field Manual (FM) 3-5. The unit reduces radiological contamination to negligible risk levels according to FM 3-5 and reduces chemical and biological contamination to accelerate the weathering process and eventually provide temporary relief from MOPP4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The contaminated unit determines the extent of contamination and establishes decontamination priorities. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Received input from staff and subordinate leaders.</li> <li>b. Established decontamination priorities.</li> </ul> 2. The contaminated unit submits a request for decontamination to higher headquarters (HQ). The request, as a minimum, includes the— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Contaminated element designation.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Contaminated element location.</li> <li>c. Contaminated element frequency and call sign.</li> <li>d. Time that the element was contaminated.</li> <li>e. Number of vehicles and equipment (by type) that were contaminated.</li> <li>f. Type of contamination.</li> <li>g. Special requirements (such as a patient decontamination station, recovery assets, and a element decontamination team).</li> </ul> <p>* 3. The contaminated unit leader coordinates with higher HQ.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Obtained permission to conduct decontamination and necessary support.</li> <li>b. Selected a linkup point to meet supporting units (a company supply section, company or battalion power-driven decontamination equipment [PDDE] crew, or decontamination squad or platoon).</li> <li>c. Coordinated with supporting units.</li> <li>d. Requested replacement MOPP gear.</li> <li>e. Coordinated with supporting units to determine if they would also conduct a MOPP gear exchange.</li> </ul> <p>* 4. The contaminated unit leader and NBC specialist select a site to conduct the operation, ensuring that the selected site provided—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Adequate overhead concealment.</li> <li>b. Good drainage.</li> <li>c. Easy access and exit (but off the main routes).</li> <li>d. The proximity to a water source large enough to support vehicle wash down.</li> <li>e. An area large enough to accommodate units involved in the operational decontamination (100 square meters for both the vehicle washdown site and the MOPP gear exchange site).</li> </ul> <p>5. The contaminated unit coordinates for operational decontamination support (such as, a company or battalion PDDE crew or a decontamination unit).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Requested operational decontamination support.</li> <li>b. Notified higher HQ of the area for the operational decontamination.</li> <li>c. Established communications with the decontamination element.</li> <li>d. Ensured that the decontamination element knew the locations of the linkup and the selected decontamination sites.</li> </ul> <p>6. The contaminated element and supporting elements move to the decontamination site.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Met at the linkup point as coordinated.</li> <li>b. Provided security at both the linkup point and the decontamination site by the contaminated element.</li> </ul> <p>7. The elements prepare for operational decontamination.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Set up the decontamination site. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) The supporting decontamination element crew set up the vehicle washdown site.</li> <li>(2) The contaminated unit set up the MOPP gear exchange site not less than 50 meters upwind of the vehicle washdown site.</li> <li>(3) The remainder of the element prepared its equipment for decontamination.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Conducted preparatory actions in the predecontamination area. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Vehicle crews (except for the operators) dismounted unless they had an operational overpressure system and an uncontaminated interior.</li> <li>(2) Dismounted crews removed mud and camouflage from the vehicles.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>NOTE: The contaminated element provides personnel to do this when the crews do not dismount.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(3) Separated vehicles and dismounted crews.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Ensured that vehicle operators were briefed (included the use of overhead cover and concealment and the proper intervals).</li> <li>(b) Ensured that vehicles were buttoned up; for example, all doors, hatches, and other openings were closed or covered.</li> </ul> </li> <li>(4) Moved vehicles (with operators) to the vehicle washdown site.</li> <li>(5) Moved dismounted crews and all other Soldiers in the contaminated unit to the MOPP gear exchange site.</li> </ul> <p>* 8. The noncommissioned officer in charge (NCOIC) of the decontamination element supervises the operation of the vehicle washdown site, ensuring that vehicle operators—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained the proper interval between vehicles while processing through the washdown station.</li> <li>b. Washed vehicles.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Started at the top and worked down.</li> <li>(2) Sprayed hot, soapy water for 2 to 3 minutes per vehicle.</li> <li>(3) Monitored water consumption.</li> </ul> </li> <li>c. Moved to the assembly area (AA) after the vehicle wash down.</li> <li>d. Moved to the MOPP gear exchange site and conducted MOPP gear exchange.</li> </ul> <p>9. The contaminated element conducts MOPP gear exchange.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Prepared the equipment decontamination station (with supertropical bleach [STB] dry mix).</li> <li>b. Briefed MOPP gear exchange participants on procedures to be followed.</li> <li>c. Placed the decontaminated individual equipment on a clean surface (such as plastic, a poncho, or similar material).</li> <li>d. Exchanged MOPP gear using the buddy system.</li> <li>e. Moved Soldiers to the AA after completing MOPP gear exchange.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTES:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>1. Ensure that the supporting units have the opportunity to use the MOPP gear exchange site before proceeding.</b></li> <li><b>2. The supporting decontamination element cleans and marks the site and reports the area of contamination (using an NBC 4 report) to higher HQ.</b></li> </ul> <p>*10. Element leaders account for all personnel and equipment after completing the operational decontamination.</p> <p>*11. The decontaminated element leader reports to higher HQ.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reported the completion and location of the vehicle washdown and MOPP gear exchange decontamination sites.</li> <li>b. Requested permission to perform unmasking procedures if no hazards were detected through testing.</li> <li>c. Determined the adequacy of decontamination and adjusted the MOPP level (after obtaining approval from higher HQ).</li> </ul> <p>12. The decontaminated element continues the mission.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-0018	Conduct Report Procedures
05-3-3006	Establish Jobsite Security

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Three Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Nine Engineer Squads  
 Company Headquarters Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Equipment Sections  
 Maintenance Section  
 Brigade Engineer Section  
 Obstacle Section  
 Equipment Section  
 Unit Maintenance Section  
 Equipment Platoon  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Three Assault and Obstacle Sections  
 Regimental Engineer Section  
 Combat Medic Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads

**TASK:** Cross a Chemically Contaminated Area (03-3-C226.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-3) (DA FORM 1248)

**ITERATION:** 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit is en route to a new location on a designated route. The unit cannot move off that route and still complete its assigned mission. The unit discovers contamination on the route and is directed to cross the contaminated area. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit crosses the contaminated area without suffering chemical-agent casualties.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The unit leader selects a route across the contaminated area. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Employed a nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) 5 (chemical) report and/or DA Form 1248 (Road Reconnaissance Report) to select a route.</li> <li>b. Selected a route that minimized exposure consistent with the mission.</li> <li>c. Obtained a route clearance and approval.</li> </ul> 2. The unit prepares to cross the area. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assumed mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4 for crossing the area.</li> <li>b. Ensured that all drivers, vehicle commanders, and leaders knew the march route or had strip maps.</li> <li>c. Ensured that all vehicles were buttoned up (mounted movement).</li> <li>d. Placed externally stored equipment inside the vehicle or covered it with available material.</li> <li>e. Attached M9 detector paper to Soldiers and vehicles to provide warning of contamination.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
3. The unit crosses the area. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Avoided low ground, overhanging branches, and brush to the extent allowed by the tactical situation.</li> <li>b. Conducted dismounted movement, if necessary, as rapidly as possible.</li> <li>c. Crossed the area as quickly and carefully as possible.</li> </ul> 4. The unit exits the contaminated area. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Checked for casualties.</li> <li>b. Reported casualties.</li> <li>c. Conducted necessary decontamination.</li> <li>d. Continued the mission.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
12-1-0403.05-T01A	Report Casualties

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** Company Headquarters

**TASK:** Direct Survivability Construction (05-1-3001)  
(FM 5-103) (FM 5-71-3)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is providing support to a maneuver task force (TF) or a brigade combat team (BCT). Survivability and obstacle plans have been formulated. The battalion commander has task-organized digging assets under the control of the battalion. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The survivability plan is executed and fighting and protective positions are constructed to standard according to the priorities and time lines. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The element leader issues an operation order (OPORD) containing the construction plan.		
* 2. The element leader supervises coordination with the maneuver commanders and on-site engineer officers in charge (OICs) to determine the physical location of direct- and indirect-fire weapons systems and other brigade assets that require protection.		
* 3. The element leader and staff coordinate for maintenance and refueling.		
* 4. The element leader supervises the execution of the construction matrix and adjusts the plan, as necessary.		
5. The element reports the status to the engineer and maneuver brigades according to unit standing operating procedures (SOPs).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
052-195-4050	Prepare Engineer Estimates
052-227-3120	Direct the Construction of a Vehicle Fighting Position
052-227-3302	Direct Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE) Dozer/Scrapper Operations



**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-2-0018	Conduct Report Procedures
05-2-3000	Control Construction of Survivability Positions
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Three Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Nine Engineer Squads  
 Company Headquarters Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Equipment Sections  
 Maintenance Section  
 Brigade Engineer Section  
 Obstacle Section  
 Equipment Section  
 Unit Maintenance Section  
 Equipment Platoon  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Three Assault and Obstacle Sections  
 Regimental Engineer Section  
 Combat Medic Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads

**TASK:** Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment (05-2-3002)  
 (FM 20-3)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit is tactically deployed. The enemy has air and ground surveillance capability, to include infrared sensors. Personnel and camouflage resources are available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The vehicles, equipment, and individual fighting positions cannot be detected by ground forces within small arms range. The location or identity of the element cannot be determined through an aerial or ground surveillance. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The element leader selects the concealed vehicle positions and traffic routes. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the vehicle operators used the concealed routes. Whenever possible, followed and paralleled hedges, woods, fences, cultivated fields, and other natural terrain features.</li> <li>b. Ensured that the vehicle track signature continued past the parked location to another logical spot.</li> </ul> 2. The operators maneuver the vehicles along concealed routes. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used the existing tracks.</li> <li>b. Avoided movement near terrain features (such as hilltops and road intersections) that may have been used as a reference point by enemy ground or aerial fires.</li> <li>c. Obliterated the vehicle tracks where they turned and concealed the vehicle positions.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>3. The element conceals the vehicles and equipment.  <b>NOTE: The leader is provided intelligence data on enemy reconnaissance capabilities in the area of operations (AO).</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Positioned the vehicles and equipment under natural cover or in shadows.</li> <li>b. Positioned the vehicles and equipment so their shapes blended with the surroundings.</li> <li>c. Used natural materials to distort and combine with the shapes or shadows of the vehicles and equipment.</li> <li>d. Blended natural materials with the surrounding area.</li> <li>e. Replaced the cut vegetation when it withered or changed color.</li> <li>f. Used nets to create shadows.</li> <li>g. Used camouflage-screening systems to enhance natural materials.</li> <li>h. Kept heat sources (generators, engines, and mess areas) under the screening systems, even when using natural concealment.</li> <li>i. Covered shiny objects, such as windshields, headlights, cab windows, and wet vehicle bodies.</li> <li>j. Dug in (if in desert or open terrain) when the situation permitted.</li> <li>k. Concealed the vehicle track signatures in snow-covered terrain.</li> <li>l. Disguised the vehicles and equipment to change their appearance or to resemble something of a lesser or greater threat to the enemy.</li> </ul> <p>4. The element conceals positions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Concealed fighting positions to prevent identification from ground level out to a distance equal to grenade range.</li> <li>b. Used natural materials to camouflage positions from aerial observation.</li> </ul> <p>* 5. The element leader enforces camouflage discipline.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the element activities did not change the area appearance or reveal the presence of military equipment or positions.</li> <li>b. Enforced measures to maintain blackout conditions at night.</li> <li>c. Ensured that measures were taken to eliminate or reduce noise by muffling or masking it with the terrain, defilade positions, or shields.</li> <li>d. Ensured that the area was policed of debris promptly.</li> </ul> <p>* 6. The element leader knows when opposing forces (OPFOR) surveillance is overhead.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Received satellite transmission (SATRAN) information from higher headquarters (HQ).</li> <li>b. Disseminated pertinent SATRAN information to subordinates.</li> <li>c. Incorporated SATRAN information into the tactical plan.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-1-0023	Plan and Direct Engineer Intelligence Collection
05-1-6000	Identify Geospatial Support Requirements
05-1-6002	Request Nonstandard Geospatial Products

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Three Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Nine Engineer Squads  
 Company Headquarters Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Equipment Sections  
 Maintenance Section  
 Brigade Engineer Section  
 Obstacle Section  
 Equipment Section  
 Unit Maintenance Section  
 Equipment Platoon  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Three Assault and Obstacle Sections  
 Regimental Engineer Section  
 Combat Medic Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads

**TASK:** Defend a Convoy Against a Ground Attack (05-2-3003)

(FM 55-30)  
(FM 24-35)

(FM 21-75)  
(FM 3-90.1)

(FM 24-19)  
(STP 5-12B24-SM-TG)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit is conducting convoy operations in support of a maneuver task force. The operation order (OPORD) and rules of engagement (ROE) provide guidance for the mission and the actions to take upon contact. The enemy squad- to platoon-sized force attacks the main body of the convoy. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The convoy protects itself and attacks or disengages from the enemy. The convoy minimizes casualties or damage by taking immediate action. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The element leader prepares for combat operations. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Designated and positioned the security elements throughout the convoy (front, rear, and flank).</li> <li>b. Established radio communications with security elements.</li> <li>c. Designated actions upon enemy contact (action front, left, right, or rear; air attack; or indirect fire).</li> <li>d. Assigned each armed vehicle a sector of fire for the movement, and ensured that the convoy had 360° coverage while moving.</li> <li>e. Designated en route rally points and the actions to be taken at those points.</li> <li>f. Coordinated with the battalion Operations and Training Officer (U.S. Army) (S3) for indirect fire along the planned route.</li> <li>g. Received an update from the battalion Intelligence Officer (U.S. Army) (S2) on probable enemy actions influencing the convoy route or mission.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>2. The element prepares for combat operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Loaded vehicles, stowed or tied down all loose equipment, and ensured that there was enough space to bring weapons to bear.</li> <li>b. Ensured that weapons were functional and had their basic load of ammunition.</li> <li>c. Rehearsed the procedures for enemy contact before the start point (SP).</li> <li>d. Ensured that each vehicle commander knew the route and all standing operating procedures (SOPs).</li> </ul> <p>3. The element reduces the effectiveness of ambushes.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Hardened vehicles and covered loads.</li> <li>b. Spaced prime targets throughout the convoy.</li> <li>c. Wore protective clothing and used assistant drivers.</li> <li>d. Carried troops and supplies.</li> <li>e. Tracked the vehicle in front, and avoided driving on the shoulder of the road.</li> <li>f. Did not run over foreign objects, brush, or grass in the road (when possible).</li> <li>g. Avoided fresh earth in the road.</li> <li>h. Watched the local national traffic and the reactions of people on foot.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: People on foot will frequently give away the location of any mines or booby traps.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>i. Used heavy vehicles, such as tanks, to explode small mines that were deployed in front of the convoy.</li> <li>j. Briefed prearranged signals to warn the convoy of an ambush.</li> <li>k. Used escort vehicles (such as military police [MP], tanks, or armored vehicles) or gun trucks.</li> <li>l. Briefed and practiced immediate-action drills, thoroughly, with all convoy personnel.</li> <li>m. Maintained an interval between vehicles, and moved through the kill zone, if possible.</li> <li>n. Stopped short of the ambush, and did not block the road.</li> <li>o. Responded to orders rapidly, returned fire aggressively, and counterattacked with escort vehicles.</li> <li>p. Called for artillery support, tactical air (TACAIR) support, and reserve forces, if necessary.</li> </ul> <p>4. The convoy reacts to enemy contact.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Scanned the area for the enemy, and returned fire at identified enemy positions.</li> <li>b. Sought available cover.</li> <li>c. Maneuvered vehicles to allow the gunner to engage the enemy, and moved all unarmed vehicles to cover.</li> <li>d. Provided suppressive gunnery fire on the enemy.</li> <li>e. Deployed the security teams, and reported the situation to the element leader.</li> </ul> <p>* 5. The element leader develops the situation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Initiated fire and maneuver.</li> <li>b. Requested indirect-fire support.</li> <li>c. Sought information on the enemy strength, composition, and disposition.</li> <li>d. Evaluated the direction and volume of enemy fire, and confirmed or suspected enemy positions and the terrain capacity for the masking forces.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 6. The element leader selects a course of action (COA) based on mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) and the developing situation. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maneuvered to attack the enemy flank.</li> <li>b. Conducted a frontal assault.</li> <li>c. Broke contact and moved away from the enemy position by fire and maneuver.</li> </ul> 7. The security element engages the enemy (within its capabilities). * 8. The element leader reports the tactical situation to higher headquarters (HQ). 9. The element reorganizes and resumes its convoy. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reconstituted the security force.</li> <li>b. Reported casualties.</li> <li>c. Treated and evacuated casualties.</li> <li>d. Redistributed ammunition and equipment.</li> <li>e. Recovered any damaged equipment or destroyed it in place.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
052-194-3500	Conduct a Patrol
071-326-5505	Issue an Oral Operation Order
071-326-5605	Control Movement of a Fire Team
071-326-5611	Conduct the Maneuver of a Squad
081-831-0101	Request Medical Evacuation
551-721-3352	Direct Convoy Defense Operations
551-721-4326	Perform Duties as Convoy Commander

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
07-2-1301.05-T01A	Conduct a Convoy
07-3-1112.05-T01A	React to an Ambush
10-2-0318.05-T01A	Perform Unit Graves Registration (GRREG) Operations

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Three Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Nine Engineer Squads  
 Company Headquarters Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Equipment Sections  
 Maintenance Section  
 Brigade Engineer Section  
 Obstacle Section  
 Equipment Section  
 Unit Maintenance Section  
 Equipment Platoon  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Three Assault and Obstacle Sections  
 Regimental Engineer Section  
 Combat Medic Section

**TASK:** Conduct an Extraction From a Minefield (05-2-3005)  
 (FM 20-32) (FM 5-250) (FM 5-34)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is moving mounted or dismounted, and discovers minefield marking indicators or a mine strike occurs. Personnel have fragmentation armor and ballistic glasses (if available). Each vehicle is equipped with 30 meters of line and light grapnels. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element extracts all vehicles and personnel from the minefield. The element submits reports to update the common operational picture. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>DANGER: PERFORM THE STEPS IN THIS TASK EXACTLY AS FOLLOWS: STOP, ASSESS, NOTE, DRAW BACK, AND INFORM (SANDI). FAILURE TO DO THIS MAY RESULT IN SERIOUS INJURY OR DEATH.</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The element <b>stops</b> and gains control of the patrol.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Stopped and did not move.</li> <li>b. Warned the rest of the patrol.</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 2. The element leader <b>assesses</b> the situation of the mines and the individuals within the patrol.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined if the element was in the middle of the minefield.</li> <li>b. Determined the nearest safe location.</li> <li>c. Determined the shortest route to the known safe area.</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 3. The element leader <b>notes</b> the situation for future reference.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Made notes about mine indicators, exposed trip wires, and mines that were seen.</li> <li>b. Indicated the number of mines located.</li> <li>c. Annotated the terrain considerations.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. Indicated the location of the minefield.</p> <p>4. The element <b>draws back</b> to the last known safe area.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed a self-extraction when dismounted and when footprints were not clearly visible by using the stepping-stone method.</li> <li>b. Performed the look-feel-probe drill. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Looked for mine indicators on the ground or in the immediate area.</li> <li>(2) Felt for trip wires on the ground where the individual was to place their feet, and informed the element leader if a mine was found.</li> <li>(3) Probed the stepping-stone area.</li> </ol> </li> <li>c. Extracted casualties.</li> </ol> <p><b>DANGER: ENTERING A MINEFIELD TO EXTRACT A FELLOW SOLDIER IS EXTREMELY HAZARDOUS AND CAN RESULT IN ADDITIONAL CASUALTIES. SOLDIERS MUST RESIST THE URGE TO RACE IN AND ASSIST THE CASUALTY.</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Used the single-casualty method in a minefield. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Called for help. Established communication with the casualty if he was conscious. Instructed the casualty to remain still and to administer self-help first aid. Reassured the casualty by telling him that help was coming.</li> <li>(b) Identified the shortest and easiest route to reach the casualty. Cleared a 1-meter-wide path if the carry technique for a casualty extraction was to be used. Cleared a 2-meter-wide path if the casualty was to be extracted on a stretcher and used the look-feel-probe drill from the prone position. Marked the path while progressing down it.</li> <li>(c) Cleared a 1- or 2-meter area around the casualty (depending on the extraction technique) to provide a safe working area for the medical and litter teams. Cleared up to and under the casualty in case he was lying on a mine.</li> <li>(d) Removed the casualty and moved him to a medical facility.</li> <li>(e) Marked and reported the minefield after leaving it.</li> </ol> </li> <li>(2) Used the vehicle or convoy extraction method. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Stopped immediately.</li> <li>(b) Used a radio to brief the situation to the appropriate higher headquarters (HQ).</li> <li>(c) Remained in the vehicle and awaited extraction, if assistance was available.</li> <li>(d) Extracted personnel from the rear of the vehicle, and walked carefully, following in the visible vehicle tracks, to the last known safe area.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> <p><b>DANGER: TRACKED-VEHICLE TRACKS MAY ALSO BE FOLLOWED, BUT CAUTION MUST BE TAKEN BECAUSE SMALL ANTIPERSONNEL (AP) MINE FUZES ARE SOMETIMES MISSED BY THE TRACK PINS AND NOT DETONATED. THESE MINES STILL POSE A THREAT TO PERSONNEL WALKING ALONG THE VEHICLE TRACK MARKS. IF THERE ARE NO VISIBLE TIRE OR TRACK MARKS, CREWS MUST EXIT THE VEHICLE USING THE LOOK-FEEL-PROBE DRILL AND CLEAR THEIR WAY TO A SAFE AREA.</b></p> <p>* 5. The element leader <b>informs</b> higher HQ of the situation.</p> <p>6. The element marks the minefield.</p> <p>* 7. The element leader submits the proper report.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
052-192-1042	Perform Self-Extraction From a Mined Area
052-192-2026	Direct a Minefield Marking Party
052-193-1013	Neutralize Booby Traps
052-193-2030	Clear Misfires
052-254-1044	Recover Equipment With a Crawler Tractor Winch

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-2-0018	Conduct Report Procedures

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Company Headquarters  
 Equipment Section  
 Three Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Nine Engineer Squads  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Three Assault and Obstacle Sections  
 Equipment Platoon  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section

**TASK:** Emplace a Hasty Protective Row Minefield (05-2-3008)  
 (FM 5-34) (DA FORM 1355-1-R) (FM 20-32)  
 (STANAG 2036)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is given an order to emplace a hasty protective row minefield to provide local security. The element is issued copies of Department of the Army (DA) Form 1355-1-R (Hasty Protective Row Minefield Record), M15 and M21 antitank (AT) mines, and M16A1 (Korea only) and M18A1 antipersonnel (AP) mines. Time is available to conduct a reconnaissance of the area. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** All mines are placed where they can be observed and covered by fire. The AT mines are placed to effect likely enemy-mounted avenues of approach (AAs). AP mines are intermixed with AT mines and affect dismounted approaches. Minefields are marked and guarded. DA Form 1355-1-R is completed and copies are submitted to the next higher headquarters (HQ). The unit sends reports according to regulatory guidance and the unit standing operating procedures (SOP). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader receives an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to lay a hasty protective row minefield.  <b>NOTE: The brigade combat team (BCT) commander has the initial authority to employ hasty protective row minefields. He may delegate emplacement authority to battalion- or company-level commanders on a mission basis. This information and authorization is found in the OPORD, which is passed to the emplacing unit. The digital units receive the OPORD or FRAGO through the Army Battle Command System (ABCS) according to the unit SOP.</b></p> <p>* 2. The element leader reports the intention to lay the minefield to higher HQ.  <b>NOTE: The intention to lay is the first of four reports. The other three are the initiation, status, and completion reports. All reports must be sent in a secure manner. In most situations, the element works together to emplace the minefield. For larger minefields, coordination for support from other combat arms must be made to supplement manpower.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined the location of the minefield.</li> <li>b. Estimated the number and types of mines to be laid.</li> <li>c. Determined whether the mines would be buried.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. Determined the proposed start of the minefield and the completion date and time.</p> <p>e. Conducted precombat checks (PCCs) and precombat inspections (PCIs).</p> <p>f. Established security.</p> <p>* 3. The tank commanders (TCs) order the drivers to maneuver their vehicles using a covered and concealed route to the selected minefield location.</p> <p>* 4. The TCs instruct drivers to move their vehicles to an overwatch position.</p> <p>a. Used cover and concealment.</p> <p>b. Moved into a hull down position, if possible.</p> <p>c. Covered likely enemy positions and approaches.</p> <p>* 5. The element and subordinate leaders conduct a reconnaissance of the proposed minefield area to identify mine locations.</p> <p>a. Overwatched likely enemy AAs.</p> <p>b. Enhanced key weapon systems.</p> <p>c. Covered dead space and ensured that the minefield was covered by fire.</p> <p>d. Established an easily identifiable reference point (RP) between the minefield and the position of the unit.</p> <p>6. The element with subordinate leaders return to draw mines and needed equipment to emplace the minefield.</p> <p>* 7. The element leader divides personnel into four parties: siting and recording, marking, mine dump, and laying.</p> <p>* 8. The element leader reports the initiation of the minefield.</p> <p>a. Specified the emplacement start time.</p> <p>b. Specified the exact location.</p> <p>c. Specified the target number.</p> <p>* 9. The element leader directs the siting and recording party to lay out the minefield, RPs, landmarks, and row markers and then sends the initiation report to higher HQ.</p> <p><b>NOTE: Mines are not armed and do not have trip wires attached. Only metallic mines are used; no booby traps or antihandling devices (AHDs) are used. A general rule of thumb for spacing AT and AP (Korea only) mines is to place them no closer than 4 meters apart. There is no maximum distance; however, the distance should not pose any tactical impact to adjacent friendly units.</b></p> <p>a. Laid the minefield from right to left.</p> <p>b. Placed row markers at the beginning and end of each row, labeled them with the corresponding letter of each row, and used number 1 for the beginning of the row and number 2 for the end.</p> <p><b>NOTE: Markers should be easily identifiable objects, such as steel pickets, that can be found with a handheld, portable mine-detecting set (AN/PSS-12).</b></p> <p>c. Ensured that the rows were outside of hand grenade range, but within the range of small-caliber weapons.</p> <p>d. Placed individual mines far enough apart to prevent simultaneous detonation.</p> <p><b>NOTE: The mines should be no closer than 4 meters for surface-laid M15 mines and 7.6 meters for surface-laid M19 mines. The distance from the row marker to the first mine in that row is the spacing used throughout the row. The spacing between rows should be no closer than 8 meters or 15 meters if AP mines are used.</b></p> <p>e. Emplaced AT mines so they would affect likely enemy-mounted AAs.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>f. Intermixed AP mines with AT mines to deny enemy-dismounted AAs.  <b>NOTE: M18A1 AP mines are command detonated when not used in Korea. M16A1 AP mines are used in Korea only.</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Buried M21 or M15 AT mines with only the tilt rod exposed.</li> <li>(2) Camouflaged the tilt rod with brush or tall grass, if time permitted.</li> <li>(3) Buried M16A1 AP mines (Korea only) up to the bottom of the release-pin ring, leaving only the pressure prongs aboveground to provide the stability required for proper employment.</li> </ol> <p>g. Submitted a strip record to the officer in charge (OIC) for recording on a DA Form 1355-1-R.</p> <p>*10. The element leader records the minefield on DA Form 1355-1-R.  <b>NOTE: All measurements are recorded in meters.</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selected and recorded an easily identifiable and relatively permanent RP in front of the position.  <b>NOTE: A good RP should have some degree of survivability from an artillery barrage.</b></li> <li>b. Determined the scale to be used in plotting the minefield on DA Form 1355-1-R.  <b>NOTE: The following formula is used to determine the scale:  D+10 meters / 4—where D = the distance from the RP to the farthest point in the minefield. Adding the 10 meters is a safety margin to ensure that the sum of the minefield sketch is entirely contained within the largest ring. Dividing by four is a constant and represents the concentric rings on DA Form 1355-1-R.</b></li> <li>c. Plotted the RP in the center of the circles on DA Form 1355-1-R.</li> <li>d. Indicated the end of each row marker by labeling it with the letter of the row. Used number 1 for one end and number 2 for the other.  <b>NOTE: The row closest to the enemy is designated by using an A, while B, C, and so on are used for succeeding rows.</b></li> <li>e. Recorded the azimuth and the distance to the last row.  <b>NOTE: Determine the magnetic azimuth in degrees from the RP to the first row marker, and record it as B1. Use B1 if there are two rows, C1 if there are three, and so forth. This marks the beginning of that row.</b></li> <li>f. Recorded the azimuth and the distance to the next row, which would be A1 in this case.</li> <li>g. Measured and recorded the distance and the azimuth to each row marker.  <b>NOTE: Measure the distance and the azimuth from A1 to the first mine to be recorded, then measure the distance and the azimuth from the first mine to the second mine and so on until all mine locations are recorded. Continue this procedure for each row. As each mine is recorded, assign it a number to identify it in the tabular block on DA Form 1355-1-R.</b></li> <li>h. Measured and recorded the distance and the azimuth from the RP to B2 and from B2 to A2.</li> <li>i. Tied in the RP with a permanent landmark.  <b>NOTE: This landmark may be used to help relocate the minefield if it is abandoned or handed over to another unit.</b></li> <li>j. Completed the tabular information blocks. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Specified the unit.</li> <li>(2) Specified the precise description of the RP.</li> <li>(3) Recorded the type of markers used to identify the rows.</li> <li>(4) Recorded the map sheet number.</li> <li>(5) Specified the name and signature of the OIC or the noncommissioned officer in charge (NCOIC).</li> <li>(6) Recorded the date and time.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(7) Specified the method used to measure the minefield; for example, the minefield was paced out and the paces were multiplied by 0.75.</p> <p>11. The element arms the mines.  <b>NOTE: The minimum safe distance is observed while arming, ensuring that 25 meters are maintained from other personnel and that rows are being armed simultaneously. The minefield must be fenced on all sides if M18A1 AP mines are employed and the minefield is to be in place for more than 72 hours.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Worked from the enemy side or front of the minefield, to the friendly side, or rear of the minefield.</li> <li>b. Camouflaged the mines, if time permitted.</li> </ul> <p>*12. The element leader recovers the mine safeties and the shipping plugs.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Collected and stored safeties, shipping plugs, and any related items in a waterproof container.</li> <li>b. Placed pins, clips, and associated items 30 centimeters behind the row marker or the RP.</li> <li>c. Recorded the items and their location in the remarks block on DA Form 1355-1-R.</li> <li>d. Informed squad members of the location of the DA Form 1355-1-R, shipping plugs, safeties, and related items.</li> </ul> <p>*13. The element leader reports the completion of the minefield.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reported to the authorizing commander using a secured means.</li> <li>b. Submitted the completed DA Form 1355-1-R to the authorizing commander.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: The digital units place the location of the minefield on the digital overlay and populate the system to provide situational awareness (SA) to friendly units in the area of operations (AO).</b></p> <p>*14. The element leader ensures that the minefield is kept under observation at all times to prevent the enemy from breaching or booby-trapping the mines.</p> <p>*15. The element leader establishes a guard to protect friendly troops and to keep noncombatants from entering the mined area.  <b>NOTE: If AP mines (Korea only) are used in the minefield and are to remain in place for longer than 72 hours, the minefield must be fenced on all sides.</b></p> <p>*16. The element leader submits additional reports according to the unit SOP or as necessary.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Submitted oral progress reports during the emplacing process concerning the amount of work completed.</li> <li>b. Submitted a written report of transfer, if the responsibility for the minefield was altered.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: The digital units can send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means.</b></p>		

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

#### **SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
052-192-1105	Install an M15 Antitank (AT) Mine Using the M624 Fuze
052-192-1107	Install an M15 Antitank (AT) Mine Using the M603 Fuze
052-192-1109	Install an M19 Antitank (AT) Mine
052-192-1154	Install an M5 Pressure-Release Firing Device on Antitank (AT) Mines
052-192-3210	Direct the Installation of a Hasty Protective Row Minefield

#### **SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-1-0081	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD)
05-2-0018	Conduct Report Procedures

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section  
 Equipment Platoon  
 Nine Engineer Squads  
 Two Equipment Sections  
 Three Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Equipment Section  
 Company Headquarters  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Obstacle Section

**TASK:** Construct Bunkers and Shelters (05-3-3000)  
 (FM 5-34) (FM 5-103)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is directed to construct bunkers and shelters in the brigade support area. The element has organic hand tools, a bulldozer, a high-mobility engineer excavator (HMEE), a deployable universal combat earthmover (DEUCE), and a crane. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element constructs bunkers and shelters, providing protection from direct-or-indirect fire and the weather, as outlined in Field Manual (FM) 5-103 and fulfilling their functional intent. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader coordinates with the commander to determine the type and location of the bunkers and shelters.</p> <p><b>NOTE: Digital units can use the Army Battle Command System (ABCS) to conduct collaborative planning.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used natural shelters (such as caves, mines, and tunnels) when possible.</li> <li>b. Selected the shelter or bunker based on the mission, terrain, available labor, and time factors.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: An underground bunker or shelter provides the highest level of protection and requires extensive labor and equipment. A cut-and-cover bunker or shelter requires partial excavation and backfill. An aboveground bunker or shelter can be constructed quickly and requires less labor. Aboveground shelters should only be used in forward areas when they are concealed in the woods, situated on a reverse slope, positioned among other buildings, or when the water table is excessively high.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>c. Sited shelters on reverse slopes, in the woods, or in a natural defilade (ravines, valleys, wadis, and other hollows or depressions in the terrain) when possible.</li> <li>d. Prepared construction time estimates using the man-hours found in FM 5-103.</li> <li>e. Prepared a bill of materials (BOM) using the plans from FM 5-103.</li> <li>f. Constructed shelters out of the paths of natural drainage lines.</li> </ul>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>2. The element constructs bunkers and shelters.</p> <p><b>NOTE: The digital units report the completion of obstacles and the locations by populating the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System and reporting to higher headquarters (HQ) according to the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Sloped or ditched the entrance sharply away from the shelter.</li> <li>b. Sloped the floor at least 1 percent toward a grenade sump at the entrance.</li> <li>c. Hung an entrance cover to block all of the light to the outside, if lights were used inside.</li> <li>d. Checked cracks and crevices to maintain light discipline.</li> <li>e. Circulated the air at a rate of 1 cubic foot per minute in the bunkers and shelters used by personnel remaining inside for long periods of time. Used stovepipes, tubes, or hollow logs to enhance the ventilation.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: This condition was met when light drapes covering the vents were moved by incoming air.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>f. Built two well-camouflaged entrances or exits on large shelters (15 or more personnel). Made the secondary exit more blast-resistant than the main exit by constructing it just large enough to crawl through.</li> <li>g. Made the overhead cover deep enough to provide the required level of protection.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) All the bunkers had 76 centimeters of overhead cover.</li> <li>(2) The container express (CONEX) shelters and the aboveground cavity wall shelters had 61 centimeters of overhead cover.</li> <li>(3) The steel-framed, fabric-covered shelters had 46 centimeters of overhead cover.</li> <li>(4) The hardened frame, fabric shelters, concrete-arch shelters, and metal-pipe arch shelters had 1.2 meters of overhead cover.</li> </ul> </li> <li>h. Camouflaged and concealed all shelters.</li> </ul> <p>3. The element improves the bunkers or shelters as time permits by adding an additional overhead cover and maintaining the camouflage.</p> <p>* 4. The element leader reports the construction status and mission completion to higher HQ according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).</p> <p><b>NOTE: The emplacing unit submits reports and locations using frequency-modulated or digital means. Digital units plot the locations of earth walls and berms on the FBCB2 to provide situational awareness to friendly units.</b></p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
052-195-3060	Direct Construction of Combat Bunkers and Shelters
052-195-4055	Determine Logistical Requirements for Bunkers
052-236-1203	Construct a Wall System
052-243-1506	Classify a Soil Using the Unified Soil Classification System
052-243-1520	Determine the Flexural Strength of Concrete
052-253-1206	Backfill an Area Using a Small-Emplacement Excavator (SEE)
052-256-3042	Direct Drainage Operations
052-256-3043	Direct Crawler Tractor Operations
052-256-3046	Direct Compaction Operations
052-256-3047	Direct Scoop Loader Operations
052-256-3048	Direct Utility Tractor Operations

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-2-3000	Control Construction of Survivability Positions
05-2-3002	Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)
05-5-3009	Prepare Crew-Served Weapons Fighting Positions

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Company Headquarters  
 Equipment Section  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section  
 Nine Engineer Squads  
 Three Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Obstacle Section  
 Equipment Platoon  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Three Assault and Obstacle Sections

**TASK:** Remove a Hasty Protective Row Minefield (05-3-3007)  
 (FM 20-32) (DA FORM 1355-1-R) (STANAG 2036)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is given an order from higher headquarters (HQ) to remove a hasty protective row minefield that the element emplaced within the assigned sector. The Department of the Army (DA) Form 1355-1-R (Hasty Protective Row Minefield Record) that shows the location of the minefield is available. Personnel and required equipment are available to assist in the removal of the minefield. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** All mines are rendered safe and removed or accounted for without damage to the mines or injury to personnel. All mines are repacked and stored according to the standing operating procedure (SOP). A report of change is filed and maintained until all mines are disarmed and removed. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The tank commander (TC) and the driver provide overwatch and security for personnel removing the minefield.  <b>NOTE: Squad members work together to accomplish this type of mission.</b></p> <p>* 2. The element leader directs the overwatch elements to a position that allows the best observation of the minefield and beyond.</p> <p>3. The security force secures and overwatches the area while it is cleared.                      a. Employed smoke on the farside to conceal mine removal, if necessary.                      b. Remained in position overwatching the removal team until the minefield was cleared.</p> <p>* 4. The element leader determines the best method for removing the mines.                      a. Directed the personnel who laid the mines to pick up the same mines, if the minefield was under constant observation from the time it was laid and was not tampered with. Used the DA Form 1355-1-R to direct the squad members on the location and types of mines to be removed.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>b. Used the DA Form 1355-1-R and mine detectors to direct squad members on the location and types of mines to be removed if the minefield was not under constant observation, may have been tampered with, the personnel who laid the mines were unavailable, or the personnel who laid the mines did not remember the location of the mines.</p> <p>* 5. The element leader retrieves safeties, shipping plugs, and other items that accompanied the emplaced mines.</p> <p>6. The removal team takes the safeties and removes the mines within the minefield.</p> <p><b>NOTE: The team starts at the reference point (RP) and moves to B1 using the azimuth and the distance provided on the DA Form 1355-1-R. The team then moves from B1 to the mine and removes the mine. If B1 is destroyed, the team moves from the RP to B2 using that azimuth and distance. The team then shoots a back azimuth (subtract 180°) from the recorded azimuth at B2 to the first mine and removes the mine. This process is continued until all the mines are removed. The stakes at A1, B1, A2, and B2 are necessary because it is safer to find a stake than to find an armed mine.</b></p> <p>a. Observed basic safety precautions by maintaining a distance of 30 meters between removal personnel.</p> <p><b>NOTE: Ensure that the removal personnel do not run in the minefield and only move around in cleared areas.</b></p> <p>b. Started with the row closest to the defender and worked away from it.</p> <p>c. Checked the sides and bottoms of mines for antihandling devices (AHDs) and disarmed them as they were found.</p> <p><b>NOTE: AHDs are not used in hasty protective row minefields. However, as a safety precaution, all mines are considered to be equipped with AHDs until proven otherwise.</b></p> <p>d. Turned the arming dials to SAFE or UNARMED, if applicable.</p> <p>e. Removed the screw-type fuze cap, then removed the screw-type fuze.</p> <p>f. Removed the shipping plug or dust cover and the entire assembly.</p> <p>g. Replaced the shipping plug or dust cover (fuze assembly).</p> <p>h. Replaced all pins, clips, and other safety devices before the mine was removed from the ground.</p> <p>i. Lifted the mine from the hole after it had been placed on SAFE.</p> <p>(1) Lifted the mine directly from the hole after rendering it safe, if it had been put in place and kept in sight by the individual who removed it.</p> <p>(2) Attached a 60-meter-long rope or wire around the mine, took cover, and pulled the mine from the hole, if the mine had not been kept in sight.</p> <p>j. Placed a tick mark on the DA Form 1355-1-R beside each mine as it was removed.</p> <p>7. The removal team assembles all the mines in one location for accountability.</p> <p>* 8. The element leader confirms the safety of the mines and accounts for the number and types of mines as recorded on the DA Form 1355-1-R.</p> <p><b>NOTE: The element leader may find it necessary to confirm an exploded mine, if it is not witnessed, to account for all the mines. If a crater is found in the vicinity of a mine, ensure that it was caused by the land mine and not artillery. Depending on the size of the mine, a mine crater is shallow, circular, and shows traces of burnt soil. The impact and the soil dispersion of artillery is generally elongated.</b></p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>9. The removal team cleans and repacks the mines for future use.  <b>NOTE: This is done only after the element leader confirms that each mine is disarmed and safe.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Repacked the mines in their original containers.</li> <li>b. Cased the mines to keep them functional and safe for future use.</li> <li>c. Stored the mines according to the unit SOP.</li> </ul> <p>10. The removal team removes and stores the row markers for future use.</p> <p>*11. The element leader submits a report of change to higher HQ stating that the minefield has been removed and the area is clear.  <b>NOTE: The commander is responsible for the surveillance and maintenance of the minefield and makes a report of change as soon as any mines are removed.</b></p> <p>*12. The element leader destroys the DA Form 1355-1-R after the minefield has been removed and the report of change has been sent.  <b>NOTE: The digital units update the digital overlay to provide current situational awareness (SA).</b></p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
052-192-1021	Locate Mines by Visual Means
052-192-1108	Remove an M15 Antitank (AT) Mine Using the M603 Fuze
052-192-1128	Locate Mines With the AN/PSS-12 Mine Detector
052-192-1266	Locate Mines By Probing
052-192-3050	Direct a Mine-Sweeping Party
052-192-3211	Direct the Removal of a Hasty Row Protective Minefield
052-192-4053	Supervise Minefield Breaching Operations

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-0015	Report Obstacle Information
05-2-0018	Conduct Report Procedures
05-2-1005	Conduct Enemy or Unobserved Minefield Clearing Operations
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Six Engineer Squads  
 Equipment Section  
 Company Headquarters  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Nine Engineer Squads  
 Three Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section  
 Equipment Platoon  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Three Assault and Obstacle Sections  
 Two Equipment Sections

**TASK:** Construct Vehicle Fighting Positions (05-3-3013)  
 (FM 5-103) (FM 5-34)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is supporting a maneuver unit during defensive operations. The supported unit occupied the position. The element has organic or augmented equipment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element constructs vehicle fighting positions, providing protection from direct and indirect fire without restricting the operational capability of the weapons system. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader coordinates with the maneuver commander to determine the type and location of the positions.</p> <p>* 2. The element leader uses the unit planning factors to estimate the completion time based on the maneuver unit vehicles and the positions required.</p> <p>* 3. The element leader prioritizes construction based on directives from the maneuver commander.</p> <p>4. The element constructs positions according to the commander's priorities.</p> <p><b>NOTE: The commander's plans may have some positions constructed to turret defilade while others are hull defilade.</b></p> <p>a. Prepared hasty positions.</p> <p>(1) Formed parapets around the vehicles to improve protection from high-explosive antitank (HEAT) projectiles and provide limited concealment.</p> <p>(a) Excavated and built-up a frontal parapet as high as practical (without interfering with the vehicle weapons system).</p> <p>(b) Improved protection by excavating deeper and extending the parapet around the sides of the vehicles.</p> <p>(2) Improved hasty positions to deliberate positions as time permitted.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Prepared deliberate positions to protect the vehicles from kinetic energy hypervelocity projectiles (such as the Sabot). <b>NOTE: See Field Manual (FM) 5-103 for position dimensions of the fighting vehicles.</b> (1) Constructed positions in the following four parts: (a) Hull defilade. (b) Concealed access ramp or route. (c) Hiding location. (d) Turret defilade. (2) Adjusted position depths to those listed in FM 5-103 for the surrounding terrain (such as the position depth on a reverse slope not being as great as on level ground). c. Ensured that positions suited the vehicle requirements by driving the vehicles into position at various stages of construction. d. Flattened out or hauled away the spoil.  * 5. The element leader submits status reports to the company and maneuver unit according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
052-195-2000	Direct Construction of Fighting Positions in Field
052-195-4009	Determine Logistical Requirements for Nonexplosive Antivehicular Obstacles
052-195-4050	Prepare Engineer Estimates
052-225-3305	Estimate Requirements for Vehicle Fighting Positions
052-227-1103	Operate the Winch of an Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE), M9
052-227-1106	Operate a Fixed Fire Extinguisher on an Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE), M9
052-227-1110	Unfold the Blade of an Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE), M9
052-227-1111	Fold the Blade of an Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE), M9
052-227-1200	Perform Dozing Operations with an Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE), M9
052-227-1225	Drive an Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE), M9
052-227-1226	Construct Vehicle Fighting Positions with an Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE), M9
052-227-1233	Perform Fording Operations with an Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE), M9
052-227-1240	Perform Scraper Operations with an Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE), M9
052-227-1241	Handle Palletized Cargo with an Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE), M9
052-227-1250	Conduct Recovery Operations with an Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE), M9
052-227-3101	Direct Recovery Operations on an M9 Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE)
052-227-3110	Direct the Folding of the Blade of an M9 Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE)
052-227-3111	Direct Unfolding the Blade of an M9 Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE)

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
052-227-3120	Direct the Construction of a Vehicle Fighting Position
052-254-1039	Excavate a Hull Defilade Position With a Crawler Tractor
052-254-1042	Level Fill Material in a Fill Area With the Angle Blade of the Crawler Tractor
052-254-1046	Remove Brush With a Crawler Tractor
052-254-1049	Rip Material With a Crawler Tractor

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-2-3001	Plan for Survivability Operations
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)
05-3-3002	Construct Protective Earthen Walls and Berms

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



- ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Three Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Nine Engineer Squads  
 Two Equipment Sections  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Obstacle Section  
 Equipment Section  
 Equipment Platoon  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads

**TASK:** Construct Vehicle Protective Positions (05-3-3014)  
 (FM 5-103) (FM 20-3) (FM 5-34)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is in support of a maneuver unit establishing a defensive position. The supported unit has occupied the position. The element has organic or augmented equipment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element constructs vehicle positions, providing protection from direct and indirect fire, without restricting the operational capability of the system. The dimensions of the positions and the time standards for construction are according to Field Manual (FM) 5-103. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader coordinates with the maneuver commander to determine the type and location of positions. When possible, he sites the positions on reverse slopes, in heavy woods, or in natural defilades.</p> <p>* 2. The element leader estimates the completion time based on the type and number of maneuver unit vehicles requiring positions.  <b>NOTE: See FM 5-103 to compute estimates.</b></p> <p>* 3. The element leader prioritizes the construction based on the projected completion time.</p> <p>4. The element constructs vehicle protective positions.                      a. Prepared parapet positions for field artillery or air defense artillery (ADA) weapons.                      (1) Constructed the parapet with the material removed from the excavation and built it low enough to allow for direct howitzer fire or did not affect the fields of fire for ADA weapons.                      (2) Stabilized the parapet walls with a waterproof cover or sandbags to prevent deterioration caused by the muzzle blast and the weather.                      (3) Camouflaged the position with natural vegetation or netting.                      (4) Ensured that positions were the correct length, width, depth, and parapet thickness.</p> <p><b>NOTE: See FM 5-103 for field artillery and ADA position dimensions.</b></p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Prepared deep-cut vehicle protective positions for the support vehicles. (1) Positioned the vehicles so the tops were at least 30.5 centimeters below the top of the surrounding wall. (2) Prepared the positions (open on both ends) with an optional rear wall. (3) Placed camouflage netting across the top of the position. (4) Ensured that the positions were the correct length, width, and depth according to FM 5-103.  * 5. The element leader reports intermediate status and mission completion to higher headquarters (HQ).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
052-195-2000	Direct Construction of Fighting Positions in Field
052-195-4009	Determine Logistical Requirements for Nonexplosive Antivehicular Obstacles
052-195-4050	Prepare Engineer Estimates
052-225-3305	Estimate Requirements for Vehicle Fighting Positions
052-227-1005	Perform Operator Preventive-Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS) on an Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE), M9
052-227-1103	Operate the Winch of an Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE), M9
052-227-1106	Operate a Fixed Fire Extinguisher on an Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE), M9
052-227-1110	Unfold the Blade of an Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE), M9
052-227-1111	Fold the Blade of an Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE), M9
052-227-1200	Perform Dozing Operations With an Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE), M9
052-227-1225	Drive an Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE), M9
052-227-1226	Construct Vehicle Fighting Positions With an Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE), M9
052-227-1233	Perform Fording Operations With an Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE), M9
052-227-1240	Perform Scraper Operations With an Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE), M9
052-227-1241	Handle Palletized Cargo With an Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE), M9
052-227-1250	Conduct Recovery Operations With an Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE), M9
052-227-3101	Direct Recovery Operations on an M9 Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE)
052-227-3110	Direct the Folding of the Blade of an M9 Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE)
052-227-3111	Direct Unfolding the Blade of an M9 Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE)
052-227-3120	Direct the Construction of a Vehicle Fighting Position
052-227-3302	Direct Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE) Dozer/Scraper Operations
052-254-1037	Construct a Ditch With a Crawler Tractor
052-254-1038	Construct a Stockpile With a Crawler Tractor
052-254-1039	Excavate a Hull Defilade Position With a Crawler Tractor
052-254-1040	Spread a Stockpile With a Crawler Tractor

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
052-254-1041	Backfill Material Around a Belowground Structure Using a Crawler Tractor
052-254-1042	Level Fill Material in a Fill Area With the Angle Blade of the Crawler Tractor
052-254-1046	Remove Brush With a Crawler Tractor
052-254-1049	Rip Material With a Crawler Tractor
052-254-1057	Backfill With a Scoop Loader
052-254-1059	Excavate With a Scoop Loader
052-254-1074	Excavate a Hull Defilade Position With a Deployable Universal Combat Earthmover (DEUCE)
052-254-2041	Construct a Berm With a Crawler Tractor
052-254-2047	Construct a Berm With a Motorized Scraper
052-256-3043	Direct Crawler Tractor Operations
052-256-3044	Direct Motorized Scraper Operations
052-256-3047	Direct Scoop Loader Operations
052-256-3048	Direct Utility Tractor Operations

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-2-0018	Conduct Report Procedures
05-2-3002	Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Equipment Section  
Company Headquarters

**TASK:** Disable Critical Equipment and Material (05-3-7005)  
(FM 5-250) (TM 750-244-2) (TM 750-244-3)  
(TM 750-244-6) (TM 750-244-7)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** An enemy assault penetrates the element position. The element leader is ordered to evacuate the position and disable equipment that the platoon cannot haul or move. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element evacuates the position and disables all critical items that cannot be hauled or moved. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The element leader prioritizes the equipment to be disabled.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used information in the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).</li> <li>b. Identified critical equipment as communication assets (radios and keying material), transportation assets (tracked and wheeled vehicles and construction equipment), barrier material (mines, wire, and explosives), and weapons systems.</li> <li>c. Prioritized the disabling of equipment based on its value to the enemy.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The element leader determines the method for disabling tracked and wheeled vehicles, including construction equipment, and directs the element as follows:                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Smashed vital elements (such as the gearbox, the starter, the battery, the engine block, the transmission, the instrument panel, and the communications equipment).</li> <li>b. Drained the hydraulic system and cut the hoses.</li> <li>c. Used explosives to disable transportation assets, such as tracked or wheeled vehicles and trailers.</li> <li>d. Used a bayonet or other cutting tool to slash all tires.</li> <li>e. Drained the oil and then ran the engine until it seized.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. The element leader determines the method for disabling communications equipment and directs the element to proceed as follows:                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Smashed vital elements using an ax, a pick, a sledgehammer, or any heavy implement. Smashed all dials, knobs, and gauges and demolished all antennas.</li> <li>b. Used explosives to disable communications equipment.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 4. The element leader determines the amount of barrier material (mines, wire, and explosives) to use, and destroys the remaining items with explosives.</li> <li>* 5. The element leader determines the method for disabling an organic bridge with demolitions.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Considered whether to use partial or complete destruction.</li> <li>b. Considered the quantity and type of explosive.</li> <li>c. Considered whether to use an electric or nonelectric firing system.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
d. Considered what the appropriate time would be to disable or demolish the bridge. e. Considered the method of coordination to use with adjacent forces. 6. The element disables critical equipment during the evacuation according to the plan of the element leader. * 7. The element leader submits status reports to the company according to the unit SOP.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
052-193-1310	Construct Demolition Firing Systems
052-193-1311	Prime Military Explosives
052-193-1312	Construct Demolition Initiating System
052-193-1313	Identify Characteristics of Military Demolitions and Explosives
052-193-2014	Determine the Safe Distance When Firing Explosives
052-193-2016	Place Steel-Cutting Charges
052-193-2030	Clear Misfires
052-193-3023	Calculate Steel-Cutting Charges
052-193-3054	Prepare a Demolition Reconnaissance Report
052-193-4040	Manage Engineer Demolition Missions

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-0018	Conduct Report Procedures

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Three Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Nine Engineer Squads  
 Company Headquarters Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Equipment Sections  
 Maintenance Section  
 Obstacle Section  
 Equipment Section  
 Unit Maintenance Section  
 Equipment Platoon  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Three Assault and Obstacle Sections  
 Company Headquarters  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads

**TASK:** Prepare Crew-Served Weapons Fighting Positions (05-5-3009)  
 (FM 5-34) (DA FORM 5517-R) (FM 5-103)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element must construct its own crew-served weapons fighting position using organic equipment. The element leader has selected and approved the location. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element constructs crew-served weapons fighting positions (providing coverage for the sector of fire and final protective line [FPL] and protection from direct and indirect fire). The position does not restrict the operational capability of the weapon system. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>1. The element constructs a machine gun position that has a primary and secondary sector of fire and reports intermediate status and completion to the element leader.</p> <p><b>NOTE: The digital units populate the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System with the location of the unit to provide current situational awareness (SA).</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Constructed the position so the gun fired to the front or oblique (firing across the front of the unit), with the oblique being the primary sector of fire.</li> <li>b. Constructed the position in an inverted T shape, with a firing platform in each corner.</li> <li>c. Used the tripod on the side with the primary sector of fire and the bipod with the secondary sector of fire.</li> <li>d. Used the earth removed during the construction of the position to provide frontal and flank protection, ensuring that it did not interfere with the sectors of fire.</li> <li>e. Ensured that the position was high enough to cover both Soldiers when they were operating the weapon.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>f. Shaped the hole so the gunner and the assistant gunner could get to the weapon.</p> <p>g. Reduced the height of the weapon by digging the tripod platform down, as much as possible, but kept the weapon traversable across the entire sector of fire.</p> <p>h. Constructed a one-Soldier supplemental fighting position to the flank for the ammunition bearer when there was a three-Soldier crew for a machine gun.</p> <p><b>NOTE: The crew connected this position to the gun position by digging a crawl trench.</b></p> <p>i. Constructed the position to armpit depth.</p> <p>j. Sloped the floor outward toward each end of the hole.</p> <p>k. Constructed grenade sumps the width of the spade and the depth of one entrenching tool length at both ends of the hole.</p> <p>l. Built the overhead cover 46 centimeters thick over the middle of the position, when possible.</p> <p>m. Improved the position, if time permitted, by adding cover, digging trenches to adjacent positions, and maintaining camouflage.</p> <p>n. Completed the position in 7 man-hours without overhead cover or 12 man-hours with overhead cover.</p> <p>2. The element constructs a machine gun position without a secondary sector of fire and reports intermediate status and completion to the squad leader.</p> <p>a. Constructed the position in a V shape, with the firing position in the apex of the V.</p> <p>b. Constructed the position following the procedures in subtasks 1d to 1l.</p> <p>c. Completed it in 6 man-hours without overhead cover or 11 man-hours with overhead cover.</p> <p>3. The element constructs a Javelin position and reports intermediate status and completion to the element leader.</p> <p>a. Used earth removed during the construction of the position for frontal and flank protection. However, left both the muzzle blast and backblast areas clear of obstacles to prevent round deflection, fires, and pressure buildup. Cleared the backblast area of highly combustible material to a distance of 5 meters. The backblast area was either level or sloping down and away from the position.</p> <p><b>DANGER: CAUTION SHOULD BE USED IN THE PLACEMENT OF THE JAVELIN. THE FOUR CAUTION AREAS FOR THE BACKBLAST AND POSSIBILITIES FOR OVERPRESSURE IN THE POSITION ARE CONCERNS. THE PRIMARY DANGER ZONE EXTENDS 25 METERS TO THE REAR AT A 60° ANGLE FROM THE REAR OF THE WEAPON. NOT PAYING ATTENTION TO THESE CAUTIONS COULD CAUSE DEATH OR SERIOUS INJURY TO PERSONNEL IN DANGER AREAS.</b></p> <p>b. Ensured that it was high enough to cover both Soldiers, if the element built cover on the flanks.</p> <p>c. Constructed the fighting position to armpit depth.</p> <p>d. Sloped the floor down toward each end of the hole.</p> <p>e. Constructed grenade sumps the width of the spade and the depth of one entrenching tool length at both ends of the hole.</p> <p>f. Ensured that the position width was narrow enough so the rear of the weapon extended over the rear of the hole when the Soldier firing the Javelin stood at the front of the position.</p> <p>g. Improved the position, if time permitted, by digging trenches to adjacent positions and maintaining camouflage.</p> <p><b>NOTE: Overhead cover is desired only if it protects the crew when they are not firing the weapon (due to the large backblast).</b></p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
h. Completed the position in 6 man-hours.		
4. The element prepares and submits a DA Form 5517-R (Standard Range Card) to the element leader.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
052-195-2000	Direct Construction of Fighting Positions in Field
052-195-3065	Direct Construction of Field Fortifications
052-253-1257	Excavate Fighting Positions Using a Small-Emplacement Excavator (SEE)

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)
05-4-1371	Provide Terrain Analysis Information

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



**ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Company Headquarters Section

**TASK:** Establish a Company Defensive Position (07-2-0414.05-T01A)  
 (FM 7-10) (FM 24-19) (FM 24-35)  
 (TC 24-20)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element has received an operation order (OPORD) or a fragmentary order (FRAGO) mission requiring the unit to provide its own security and defense. The opposing forces (OPFOR) elements, consisting of as much as a motorized rifle company or airborne equivalent, have been active in friendly rear areas. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element completes all preparations for the defense within the time specified by the OPOrd. The company is not surprised by the OPFOR, suffers no casualties from friendly fire, and repels the OPFOR attacks. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>NOTE: The elements execute the following tasks when the company is performing this task: Establish Unit Defense, Defend the Unit Position, Construct a Protective Obstacle, and Conduct Hasty Minefield Operations.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The commander develops a defensive plan according to the OPOrd or the FRAGO.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established sectors or boundaries for the subordinate elements.</li> <li>b. Assigned battle positions for the company elements.</li> <li>c. Designated primary, alternate, and supplementary positions.</li> <li>d. Designated engagement areas (EAs).</li> <li>e. Developed the fire support (FS) plan, including the target reference points (TRPs) forward, within, and to the rear of the defensive position.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The commander conducts a leader's reconnaissance with key company leaders.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established local security.</li> <li>b. Confirmed or modified his plan.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. Leaders survey the terrain to finalize their defensive plans.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified the covered and concealed routes to and between all positions.</li> <li>b. Identified all avenues of approach (AAs).</li> <li>c. Identified dead space.</li> <li>d. Requested indirect FS to cover the dead space and the likely AAs.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: Digital units request indirect FS using the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System or frequency-modulated (FM) means according to the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>e. Identified locations for the company command post (CP), observation posts (OPs), the supply point, and the company casualty collection point.</li> <li>f. Identified potential landing zones (LZs) that the enemy could use for an air assault.</li> </ul> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 4. The commander designates unit positions or sectors.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Concentrated fire on the most dangerous and most likely AAs.</li> <li>b. Selected positions with good fields of fire and observation of enemy ground and air forces.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Provided cover and concealment.  d. Permitted adequate lateral and in-depth dispersion.</p> <p>5. The company establishes unit security.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established the OPs and the air guards.</li> <li>b. Conducted patrols in areas that could not be observed.</li> <li>c. Emplaced early-warning devices.</li> <li>d. Conducted stand-to procedures according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP) or order.</li> </ol> <p>* 6. Leaders position key weapons and establish fields of fire.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Oriented the units to provide all-around security.</li> <li>b. Ensured that the weapons covered the most dangerous AAs, EAs, or selected kill zones based on the defensive technique.</li> <li>c. Effected mutual support between elements.</li> <li>d. Ensured that the anti-armor weapons covered the likely armor AAs.</li> <li>e. Registered indirect fire and final protection fires (FPFs) on the most dangerous dismounted AAs, where possible.</li> </ol> <p>* 7. Leaders check the position for potential problems.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Walked the positions and adjusted for fields of fire.</li> <li>b. Walked the terrain in front of the positions to determine if personnel accomplished their assigned tasks.</li> </ol> <p>* 8. The leaders coordinate with flank elements.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established responsibility for overlapping enemy AAs.</li> <li>b. Exchanged information on the OP locations, patrols, unit signals, and passage points.</li> </ol> <p>9. The commander coordinates a withdrawal plan.</p> <p>10. The company establishes communications, if available.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used wire as the primary communications, if available.</li> <li>b. Ensured that the platoon or company CP had communication with the OPs, higher and subordinate leaders, adjacent units, and FS team.</li> <li>c. Conducted periodic communication checks to ensure that all communication equipment was operational.</li> <li>d. Planned and provided for an alternate means of communication.</li> </ol> <p>11. The company emplaces minefields and obstacles.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Requested and received clearance to lay protective minefields.</li> <li>b. Emplaced mines or obstacles according to the company obstacle plan and recorded the minefield on the standard minefield form.</li> <li>c. Covered mines or obstacles by observation and direct and indirect fires.</li> <li>d. Reported the location of mines or obstacles to all elements, and forwarded the standard minefield record to the next higher command as soon as possible.</li> </ol> <p>12. The company defends against an enemy assault.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Detected and reported enemy contact by the OPs.</li> <li>b. Withdrew the OPs on order or according to the company SOP.</li> <li>c. Increased the intensity of defensive fires as the enemy elements were within range of each individual or the weapons system.</li> </ol> <p>*13. The commander or forward observer (FO) defends against an enemy assault.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Called for and engaged the attacking force with indirect fire according to the company SOP.</li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>b. Requested FPF from the supporting indirect-fire units as the enemy neared the final protective line (FPL).</p> <p>*14. The commander defends against an enemy assault.</p> <p>a. Initiated direct-fire engagement of the attacking force according to the unit SOP.</p> <p>b. Executed the obstacle plan according to the battalion OPORD or FRAGO.</p> <p>c. Increased the intensity of defensive fires as the enemy elements were within range of additional weapons.</p> <p>15. The company consolidates and reorganizes during lulls in the fighting.</p> <p>a. Executed platoon consolidation and reorganization.</p> <p>b. Treated and evacuated casualties.</p> <p>c. Transmitted the status report, and requested replacement personnel.</p> <p>d. Requested resupply.</p> <p>e. Replaced damaged barriers and obstacles.</p> <p>f. Restored communication.</p> <p>g. Repositioned the OPs that were withdrawn during the engagement.</p> <p>h. Resumed security and patrolling activities.</p> <p>16. The company continues to defend.</p> <p>a. Forced the enemy to withdraw.</p> <p>b. Disengaged by order of higher headquarters (HQ).</p> <p>c. Ordered the reposition of platoons to alternate or supplement positions as needed.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-3001	Direct Survivability Construction
05-2-3000	Control Construction of Survivability Positions
05-2-3008	Emplace a Hasty Protective Row Minefield
05-2-6007	Identify Terrain Information Requirements
05-3-2019	Construct Wire Obstacles
05-3-2022	Construct a Protective Obstacle
05-3-3006	Establish Jobsite Security
05-3-3007	Remove a Hasty Protective Row Minefield
05-4-2016	Mark a Minefield
05-6-0094	Plan Engineer Survivability Operations

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
19-1-2001	Coordinate Area Security Operations
19-1-2203	Direct Site Security Operations
19-3-2204.05-T01A	Employ Physical Security Measures
71-2-0332.05-T01A	Maintain Operations Security (OPSEC)

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Three Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Nine Engineer Squads  
 Company Headquarters Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Equipment Sections  
 Maintenance Section  
 Brigade Engineer Section  
 Obstacle Section  
 Equipment Section  
 Unit Maintenance Section  
 Equipment Platoon  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Three Assault and Obstacle Sections  
 Regimental Engineer Section  
 Combat Medic Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads

**TASK:** React to an Ambush (07-3-1112.05-T01A)  
 (FM 7-8) (FM 3-20.98) (FM 34-2-1)  
 (FM 7-92)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is in a prepared kill zone. The enemy initiates the ambush with a casualty-producing device and a high volume of fire. The unit has guidance provided by the rules of engagement (ROE) and from mission instructions, such as the peace mandate terms of reference, the Status of Forces Agreement (SOFA), and the rules of interaction (ROI). Civilians, government organizations, nongovernment organizations, private voluntary organizations, and the international press may be present on the battlefield. The presence of civilians can restrict the use of fires and reduce the combat power available to the commander. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element reacts immediately to the ambush based on the type (near or far). The platoon disengages the element in the kill zone or forces the enemy to withdraw. The platoon continues follow-on operations. The unit complies with the ROE, mission instruction, and higher headquarters (HQ) and other special orders. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. Leaders ensure that the ROE and the ROI are disseminated to subordinate personnel.  2. Personnel in the kill zone react to a near ambush (within hand grenade range). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Returned fire immediately; assumed covered positions; and threw fragmentation, concussion, and smoke grenades.</li> <li>b. Assaulted individually through the ambush using individual fire and movement immediately after the grenades detonated.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
3. Personnel not in the kill zone react to a near ambush. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified enemy positions.</li> <li>b. Initiated immediate suppressive fires against the enemy.</li> <li>c. Took up covered positions.</li> <li>d. Shifted fires as personnel in the kill zone assaulted through the ambush.</li> </ul> 4. Personnel receiving fire in a far ambush (beyond hand grenade range) immediately return fire and take up covered positions. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Suppressed or destroyed enemy crew-served weapons first.</li> <li>b. Obscured the enemy position with smoke.</li> <li>c. Sustained suppressive fires and shifted them as the assaulting squads fought through the enemy position.</li> </ul> 5. Personnel not receiving fire react to a far ambush. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Moved by a covered and concealed route to a vulnerable flank of the enemy position.</li> <li>b. Assaulted using fire and movement techniques.</li> </ul> 6. The element forward observer (FO) calls for and adjusts indirect fires as directed by the element leader. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used indirect fires to isolate the enemy position.</li> <li>b. Adjusted fires on any retreating enemy.</li> </ul> * 7. The platoon leader accounts for all personnel and equipment after the enemy has withdrawn. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reported the situation to higher HQ.</li> <li>b. Consolidated and reorganized, as necessary.</li> <li>c. Continued the mission.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-0100	Coordinate the Synchronization and Integration of Fire Support (FS)
08-2-0314.05-T01A	Treat Unit Casualties (for Units With Medical Treatment Personnel)
12-1-0403.05-T01A	Report Casualties

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Three Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Nine Engineer Squads  
 Company Headquarters Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Equipment Sections  
 Maintenance Section  
 Brigade Engineer Section  
 Company  
 Obstacle Section  
 Equipment Section  
 Unit Maintenance Section  
 Equipment Platoon  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Three Assault and Obstacle Sections  
 Regimental Engineer Section  
 Combat Medic Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads

**TASK:** React to Unexploded Ordnance (UXO) (09-2-0337.05-T01A)  
 (FM 21-16)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** During combat operations, the unit encounters a UXO hazard. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element reacts to the UXO hazard while continuing the mission without loss of personnel or equipment. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The element recognizes the UXO hazard. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified the UXO by type.</li> <li>b. Identified the UXO by subgroup.</li> <li>c. Observed all safety precautions.</li> </ul> * 2. The element leader takes immediate action for the UXO hazard. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Evacuated the area, as appropriate.</li> <li>b. Determined the appropriate action to take.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Avoided the UXO hazard.</li> <li>(2) Instituted protective measures.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> * 3. The element leader designates the element to mark the area. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Chose leaders to mark the area.</li> <li>b. Briefed leaders on the area to be marked.</li> </ul> * 4. The element marks the UXO hazard. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Marked all the logical approach routes.</li> </ul>		

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO-GO</b>
b. Ensured that the UXO was visible from all markers. * 5. The element reports the UXO hazard. a. Initiated the UXO spot report. b. Determined the priority based on the current situation. c. Forwarded the report to the next higher headquarters (HQ) by the fastest means available.		

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
052-192-1258	Conduct Booby Trap Search
052-192-3258	Organize a Booby Trap Search Team

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-2-0018	Conduct Report Procedures

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



- ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Three Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Nine Engineer Squads  
 Company Headquarters Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Equipment Sections  
 Maintenance Section  
 Brigade Engineer Section  
 Obstacle Section  
 Equipment Section  
 Unit Maintenance Section  
 Equipment Platoon  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Three Assault and Obstacle Sections  
 Regimental Engineer Section  
 Combat Medic Section

**TASK:** Employ Physical Security Measures (19-3-2204.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-19.30) (FM 3-19.4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** An opposing forces (OPFOR) squad-size patrol attempts reconnaissance or intrusion into the command post (CP) perimeter. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element maintains 24-hour security in its assigned sector and is not surprised by the OPFOR.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader prepares a physical security plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Controlled the entry of vehicles into the CP.</li> <li>b. Developed procedures for selecting and manning perimeter positions.</li> <li>c. Developed procedures for detecting and reporting OPFOR intrusion or observation of the CP perimeter.</li> <li>d. Controlled access to the element defensive areas.</li> <li>e. Established communications links between observation posts (OPs) and the reaction force.</li> <li>f. Developed procedures for initial response to ground attacks.</li> </ul> <p>2. The element operates a guard force.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established communication with the guard commander.</li> <li>b. Stopped unauthorized entry into restricted areas.</li> <li>c. Conducted random exterior patrols to find and neutralize OPFOR intruders before they breached the CP perimeter.</li> </ul> <p>3. The element reacts to an OPFOR ground attack.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assumed preplanned positions.</li> <li>b. Denied intrusion into the CP perimeter.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
11-5-0121.05-T01A	Provide a Field Cable or Wire System
11-5-1102.05-T01A	Install, Operate, and Maintain a Single-Channel, Ground and Airborne Radio System (SINCGARS) Frequency Hopping (FH) Net

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Three Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Nine Engineer Squads  
 Company Headquarters Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Equipment Sections  
 Maintenance Section  
 Brigade Engineer Section  
 Obstacle Section  
 Equipment Section  
 Unit Maintenance Section  
 Equipment Platoon  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Three Assault and Obstacle Sections  
 Regimental Engineer Section  
 Combat Medic Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads

**TASK:** Use Passive Air Defense Measures (44-1-C220.05-T01A)  
 (FM 44-100) (FM 44-64) (FM 44-8)  
 (FM 44-80)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is in a tactical position. Hostile aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, or unmanned aerial vehicles [UAVs]) have been operating in the general area. The element weapon control status (WCS) is weapons hold. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, and UAVs) do not detect the unit. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The element leader uses passive air defense measures in a tactical position. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used all available resources (camouflage, cover, concealment, and dispersion) to hide personnel and equipment to limit vulnerability.</li> <li>b. Covered or shaded any shiny items, particularly windshields and optics.</li> <li>c. Established and rehearsed the air attack alarms.</li> <li>d. Dispersed vehicles, tents, and supplies to reduce vulnerability to an air attack.</li> <li>e. Constructed field fortifications with organic equipment (as necessary) to protect personnel and vulnerable mission-essential equipment.</li> <li>f. Manned observation posts (OPs) during the day and night to provide warning of approaching aerial platforms.</li> <li>g. Established a listening watch on the air defense early warning net, if the equipment was available and operational.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 2. The element leader achieves air situational awareness (SA) by monitoring with simplified handheld terminal units (SHTUs).</p> <p>* 3. The element leader uses passive air defense measures in a convoy.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that all personnel received the convoy commander's briefing.</li> <li>b. Camouflaged vehicles and equipment before moving out.</li> <li>c. Selected a column interval based on instructions, the mission, and the terrain.</li> <li>d. Placed crew-served weapons throughout the convoy to cover the avenues of approach (front, rear, and flank).</li> <li>e. Assigned Soldiers to air guard duties with specific search sectors covering 360°.</li> <li>f. Identified threat aerial platforms visually.</li> <li>g. Reported all aircraft actions to higher headquarters (HQ).</li> <li>h. Established and rehearsed the air attack alarms.</li> </ul> <p>4. Element personnel use passive air defense measures when occupying or displacing a position.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained the vehicle interval specified in the movement order.</li> <li>b. Staggered vehicles to avoid linear patterns.</li> <li>c. Assigned air guards to the sectors of search that covered 360°, and maintained the coverage until the convoy completed the movement.</li> <li>d. Identified threat aerial platforms visually.</li> <li>e. Reported all aircraft actions to higher HQ.</li> <li>f. Established the vehicle order of precedence.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-0018	Conduct Report Procedures
05-2-3002	Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company  
 Company Headquarters  
 Three Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Nine Engineer Squads  
 Company Headquarters Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Equipment Sections  
 Maintenance Section  
 Brigade Engineer Section  
 Obstacle Section  
 Equipment Section  
 Unit Maintenance Section  
 Equipment Platoon  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Three Assault and Obstacle Sections  
 Regimental Engineer Section  
 Combat Medic Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads

**TASK:** Take Active Combined Arms Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (44-1-C221.05-T01A)

(FM 44-100)  
 (FM 44-80)

(FM 44-64)

(FM 44-8)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element receives an early warning of aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, or unmanned aerial vehicles [UAVs]) in the area. Unit personnel detect unknown or hostile aerial platforms. The element is in a tactical position. The weapon control status (WCS) is weapons tight. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element destroys or forces attacking aerial platforms away from friendly positions. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. Leaders direct combined arms air defense measures against the hostile aerial platforms not attacking a stationary unit.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Gave the air attack alarm.</li> <li>b. Organized the element to defensive positions.</li> <li>c. Ordered a search of the assigned sectors for aerial platforms.</li> <li>d. Identified and reported the presence of aerial platforms in the area and sent priority intelligence requirements (PIR) to higher headquarters (HQ).</li> <li>e. Made the engagement decision.</li> <li>f. Engaged the element in attacking the aerial platforms with all available small arms, such as rifles and machine guns.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: Expect the firing signature from small arms to disclose the element position.</b></p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO																					
<p>g. Performed all precautionary measures to ensure that no fratricide occurred during the engagement.</p> <p>h. Directed Soldiers to reload weapons following the engagement.</p> <p>i. Sent the PIR to higher HQ.</p> <p><b>NOTES:</b></p> <p><b>1. Aim points for propeller-driven aircraft are the same as for helicopters.</b></p> <p><b>2. Select the aim points in football field lengths: one football field equals about 91 meters.</b></p> <p><b>3. Once the lead distance is estimated, the riflemen and machine gunners aim and fire their weapons at the aim point until the aircraft has flown past that point. Maintain the aim point, not the lead distance. The weapon should not move once the firing cycle starts.</b></p> <p><b>4. Establish preselected aim points when the unit is in a static position.</b></p> <p><b>5. Accuracy in relation to target hits is not necessary. Accuracy in relation to the aim point is necessary. Volume fire (a coordinated, high volume of fire that the aircraft has to fly through) will achieve the desired results.</b></p> <table border="0"> <thead> <tr> <th>TYPE OF AERIAL PLATFORMS</th> <th>COURSE</th> <th>AIM POINT</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Jet/cruise missile</td> <td>Crossing</td> <td>Two football fields in front of the aerial platform nose</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Jet/cruise missile</td> <td>Overhead</td> <td>Two football fields in front of the aerial platform nose</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Jet/cruise missile</td> <td>Directly at you</td> <td>Slightly above the aerial platform nose</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Helicopter/UAV</td> <td>Crossing</td> <td>One-half football field in front of the aerial platform nose</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Helicopter/UAV</td> <td>Directly at you</td> <td>Slightly above the helicopter/UAV body</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Helicopter/UAV</td> <td>Hovering</td> <td>Slightly above the helicopter/UAV body</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>j. Evaluated the situation and moved the unit position as directed by the unit commander.</p> <p>* 2. Leaders direct small arms air defense measures against hostile aerial platforms not attacking a moving target.</p> <p>a. Gave the air attack alarm.</p> <p>b. Dispersed vehicles laterally and in-depth or had the vehicle operators continue to move the unit.</p> <p>c. Moved vehicles to covered and concealed positions. All personnel not assigned crew-served weapons dismounted and prepared to engage the aircraft or increased dispersion.</p> <p>d. Engaged nonattacking aircraft only as directed.</p> <p>e. Identified threat aerial platforms visually.</p> <p>f. Reported all aerial platform actions to higher HQ.</p> <p>g. Prepared the element to engage on orders of the senior leader.</p> <p>h. Engaged the element (when ordered to do so by the senior leader) in attacking the aerial platforms with all available small arms.</p> <p>i. Directed Soldiers to reload weapons following the engagement.</p> <p>* 3. Leaders direct combined arms air defense measures against aerial platforms attacking a stationary unit.</p> <p>a. Gave the air attack alarm.</p> <p>b. Engaged all available personnel immediately in attacking the aerial platforms per the tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).</p>	TYPE OF AERIAL PLATFORMS	COURSE	AIM POINT	Jet/cruise missile	Crossing	Two football fields in front of the aerial platform nose	Jet/cruise missile	Overhead	Two football fields in front of the aerial platform nose	Jet/cruise missile	Directly at you	Slightly above the aerial platform nose	Helicopter/UAV	Crossing	One-half football field in front of the aerial platform nose	Helicopter/UAV	Directly at you	Slightly above the helicopter/UAV body	Helicopter/UAV	Hovering	Slightly above the helicopter/UAV body		
TYPE OF AERIAL PLATFORMS	COURSE	AIM POINT																					
Jet/cruise missile	Crossing	Two football fields in front of the aerial platform nose																					
Jet/cruise missile	Overhead	Two football fields in front of the aerial platform nose																					
Jet/cruise missile	Directly at you	Slightly above the aerial platform nose																					
Helicopter/UAV	Crossing	One-half football field in front of the aerial platform nose																					
Helicopter/UAV	Directly at you	Slightly above the helicopter/UAV body																					
Helicopter/UAV	Hovering	Slightly above the helicopter/UAV body																					

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>c. Directed Soldiers to reload weapons following the engagement.</li> <li>d. Ensured that Soldiers assigned to observation posts (OPs) continued to scan their assigned sectors.</li> <li>e. Reported any aircraft action to higher HQ.</li> <li>f. Reported any casualties to higher HQ.</li> <li>g. Evaluated the situation and moved the element position as directed by the tactical situation or the TACSOP.</li> </ul> <p>* 4. The element leader or noncommissioned officers (NCOs) direct small arms air defense measures during the convoy movement.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Alerted vehicle commanders of an impending attack.</li> <li>b. Dispersed vehicles, alternately, to the shoulders of the road or off the road if possible. Turned to covered and concealed positions, if the terrain permitted.</li> <li>c. Maintained vehicle intervals or increased the interval or dispersion by using evasive driving techniques.</li> <li>d. Ordered the element to dismount and take up firing positions.</li> <li>e. Prepared personnel to fire on the orders of the senior individual present or automatically returned fire (per engagement procedures) if an aircraft was attacking.</li> <li>f. Identified aerial platforms.</li> <li>g. Engaged the element in attacking aerial platforms with all available small arms, such as rifles and machine guns.</li> <li>h. Directed Soldiers to reload weapons following the engagement.</li> <li>i. Reported the attack and submitted the PIR to higher HQ.</li> <li>j. Reported any casualties to higher HQ.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-0018	Conduct Report Procedures
05-2-3000	Control Construction of Survivability Positions
07-2-1301.05-T01A	Conduct a Convoy

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Three Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Nine Engineer Squads  
 Company Headquarters Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Equipment Sections  
 Maintenance Section  
 Brigade Engineer Section  
 Company  
 Obstacle Section  
 Equipment Section  
 Unit Maintenance Section  
 Equipment Platoon  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Three Assault and Obstacle Sections  
 Regimental Engineer Section  
 Combat Medic Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads

**TASK:** Perform Risk Management Procedures (71-2-0326.05-T01A)  
 (AR 385-10) (FM 3-0) (FM 7-0)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is deployed, performing its combat mission. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Leaders and Soldiers are aware of potential safety problems when conducting the task. The element trains to standard and does not take shortcuts that endanger element members. All risks taken are necessary to accomplish the training objectives. Appropriate measures are taken to minimize risks. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The commander identifies the risk or safety hazards.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Analyzed the operation plan (OPLAN), the fragmentary order (FRAGO), and the operation order (OPORD) for specified and implied missions (tasks).</li> <li>b. Integrated safety into every phase of the planning process.</li> <li>c. Assessed the risks before issuing a FRAGO when the mission or conditions changed.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. Leaders evaluate the risk or safety hazards identified in the operation.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Compared the risk to the acceptable level of risk in the commander's intent, based on the stated training objective.</li> <li>b. Determined the likelihood of equipment and personnel losses from accidents.</li> <li>c. Described the operation in terms of high, medium, or low risk.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
d. Prepared courses of action (COAs) that minimized accidental losses.  * 3. The commander (or leaders) eliminates or reduces the risk or safety hazards. a. Chose a COA that maximized the operation and minimized the risk. b. Developed procedures that reduced the risk or safety hazards. c. Prescribed the safety or protective equipment. d. Briefed the elements before all operations.  4. The element carries out safety procedures. a. Received safety briefings before all operations. b. Practiced the safety procedures during all mission rehearsals. c. Made on-the-spot safety corrections.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
Equipment Section

**TASK:** Coordinate for Medical Services (05-2-0050)  
(FM 4-02) (FM 4-02.6) (FM 8-10-6)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The company is performing continuous tactical operations. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** All leaders know the evacuation procedures and where to receive medical support. Subunits can identify the location of medical facilities and services. Medical support is available at all times. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The unit leader determines medical-support requirements.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assessed the number and type of missions assigned and anticipated.</li> <li>b. Considered the size of the element performing the mission.</li> <li>c. Reviewed the time periods for mission accomplishment.</li> </ul> </li> <li>2. The operations noncommissioned officer (NCO) requests medical support from the Adjutant (U.S. Army) (S1) and Operations and Training Officer (U.S. Army) (S3). He includes critical information on the request.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Included the number of medics needed.</li> <li>b. Included the date and time that the medics were needed.</li> <li>c. Included any special equipment that the medics needed to bring.</li> <li>d. Included the time and location that the medics would linkup with the unit.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. The element leader coordinates for pickup and assigns medics.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Briefed medics on the mission.</li> <li>b. Assigned medics to platoons based on the mission.</li> <li>c. Briefed medics on administration and logistical support, such as mess time, stand-to, and sleep areas.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 4. The element leader plans for the treatment and evacuation of casualties.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established sick call procedures according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).</li> <li>b. Located medical facilities and medical supply points in the area of operations (AO).</li> <li>c. Planned treatment operations with the assistance of the medic.                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Designated the company casualty collection point.</li> <li>(2) Selected casualty evacuation routes.</li> <li>(3) Determined the disposition of casualty weapons and equipment.</li> <li>(4) Planned security for the casualty collection point.</li> <li>(5) Ensured that all elements designated aid and litter teams.</li> </ul> </li> <li>d. Identified and disseminated evacuation procedures.                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Identified medical evacuation (MEDEVAC) 9 line report procedures.</li> <li>(2) Determined routes.</li> <li>(3) Identified the vehicle to be used as an ambulance.</li> <li>(4) Determined medical facility locations.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(5) Included information in all operation orders (OPORDs) outlining evacuation procedures.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-0017	Integrate Augmentation Support
05-1-0081	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD)

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Three Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Company Headquarters Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads

**TASK:** Coordinate for Food Service Support (05-2-0051)  
 (FM 10-23) (AR 30-22) (DA FORM 5913)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element does not have an organic mess capability. Coordination for food service support is required. The unit is performing continuous tactical operations. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit coordinates for three nutritious meals daily for all assigned and attached Soldiers. Soldiers do not miss meals because of coordination lapses.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader or food service officer (FSO) determines the daily feeding plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined personnel strength, including attached and supporting personnel.</li> <li>b. Identified locations and times for meals.</li> <li>c. Considered consolidation of subunits.</li> <li>d. Developed a distribution plan to support the mission.</li> <li>e. Determined the type (A-; T-; or meal, ready-to-eat [MRE]) of rations based on mission constraints.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. The element leader or FSO requests and coordinates for meals as required.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Prepared a Department of the Army (DA) Form 5913 (Strength and Feeder Report) and forwarded the report to the Supply Officer (U.S. Army) (S4) according to the tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Identified the nature of the requirement.</li> <li>(2) Established the date the meals were required.</li> <li>(3) Determined the total number of meals required.</li> <li>(4) Established the time of meal pickup or delivery.</li> <li>(5) Determined the location of the units needing delivery.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Informed the S4 of any changes that would affect the operation.</li> <li>c. Maintained a tolerance of plus or minus 5 percent of the total head count for hot meals.</li> <li>d. Submitted requests for hot meals at least 8 hours before the meal.</li> <li>e. Coordinated the times and locations for pickup or delivery.</li> </ul> <p>3. The element executes Class I operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Followed the unit standing operating procedure (SOP) for the tactical feeding plan.</li> <li>b. Served hot meals no later than required by food service guidelines.</li> <li>c. Set up a one-way staggered serving line (one line on each side of the central-distribution site) if in danger of being attacked.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
d. Set up a one-way straight serving line (one line on each side of the central-distribution site) if attack was unlikely. e. Dispersed the serving line in 5-meter intervals to reduce casualty potential. f. Ensured that Soldiers dispersed while eating to prevent mass casualties from an enemy attack. g. Established washing facilities. h. Disposed of all trash and garbage properly.  * 4. The element leader ensures that proper field sanitation measures are followed.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-3-7004	Receive a Logistics Package (LOGPAC)

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
Equipment Section

**TASK:** Coordinate the Location of Class IV and Class V Supply Points (05-2-0080)  
(FM 3-34) (FM 20-32) (FM 90-7)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The task force (TF) is in continuous operations during daylight or darkness. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The engineer elements are in support of TF operations during defensive and offensive operations. The location of Class IV and Class V supply points must be established in order to sustain combat effectiveness. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader analyzes the mission and determines the necessary Class IV and Class V supplies. He—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the basic loads for each weapons system were on hand.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: Basic loads can be used to accomplish the mission; however, resupply should come from mission loads.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Determined the critical events where Class IV and Class V supplies were needed according to the decision support template (DST) and the synchronization matrix.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: This is done in coordination with the TF engineer.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>c. Organized the engineer elements that were task-organized to pick up, transport, and deliver supplies in a timely manner.</li> <li>d. Transmitted requests.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: Digital units send requests, using the Army Battle Command System (ABCS), through higher headquarters (HQ) to the Supply Officer (U.S. Army) (S4).</b></p> <p>2. The element S4 coordinates for Class IV and Class V supplies.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated with the supporting combat service support (CSS) element to determine the availability of Class IV and Class V supplies.</li> <li>b. Coordinated the pickup points of the using units.</li> <li>c. Requested additional haul assets when the organic transportation assets were depleted.</li> <li>d. Determined personnel requirements for Class IV and Class V supply points. Tasked for personnel in the TF operation order (OPORD), if not in the tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).</li> <li>e. Determined and coordinated with the TF engineer for the necessary Class IV and Class V materials.</li> <li>f. Tracked the current quantities of material at Class IV and Class V supply points.</li> </ul> <p>* 3. The element prepares to execute the haul mission.</p> <p><b>NOTE: Digital units plot the pickup-point location on the digital overlay according to the unit TACSOP.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed troop-leading procedures.</li> <li>b. Coordinated the pickup-point location with the company operations.</li> <li>c. Moved assets to the designated location and performed the haul mission.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
d. Distributed assets according to the obstacle plan allocation.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
052-194-4010	Supervise Engineer Support to Engagement Area Development

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)
05-3-7004	Receive a Logistics Package (LOGPAC)

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Three Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Nine Engineer Squads  
 Equipment Platoon  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section

**TASK:** Repair Airfields (05-2-0702)  
 (FM 5-430-00-1) (FM 5-34) (FM 5-430-00-2)  
 (FM 5-436)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The company receives a mission to repair an existing airfield for a medium-lift aircraft classification (C-130 aircraft) in the forward area. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The airfield is capable of receiving and launching C-130-type aircraft. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The company commander prepares an operation order (OPORD) and coordinates with the battalion for construction equipment (especially a grader and roller), tools, and materials.</li> <li>* 2. The company commander ensures that the company establishes jobsite security.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined the level of security for the jobsite and ensured that the company—                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Followed the procedures beginning with step 2b, if the engineer company was working alone or in an isolated area.</li> <li>(2) Followed the procedures beginning with step 2d, if a maneuver force was providing security.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Ensured that the company occupied an overwatch position of the jobsite and—                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Covered and concealed the position.</li> <li>(2) Guarded the jobsite from the overwatch position.</li> </ul> </li> <li>c. Ensured that a reconnaissance or minesweeping team secured the jobsite and—                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Checked for a possible enemy ambush at the jobsite.</li> <li>(2) Determined if explosive ordnance disposal (EOD) support was required.</li> <li>(3) Found and destroyed any mines on the jobsite.</li> </ul> </li> <li>d. Ensured that the company moved in and occupied the position after the area was clear and leaders—                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Reconnoitered tentative fighting positions.   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>( a ) Stopped vehicles in covered and concealed positions.</li> <li>( b ) Dismounted.</li> </ul> </li> <li>(2) Designated sectors and general locations for the vehicles and crew-served weapons.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>3. The company repairs the airfield.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the landing strip longitudinal slope was no greater than 3 percent.</li> <li>b. Repaired ruts and potholes.</li> <li>c. Freed the landing strip of standing water. Repaired muddy spots by replacing the unsuitable subgrade material.</li> <li>d. Cleared the ditches and culverts of debris, such as branches, leaves, trash, and rocks.</li> <li>e. Repaired drainage structures, as required.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: This method is applicable only to drainage areas of 100 acres or less. Use the hasty method if the area contains an active stream.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Determined the runoff using the field estimate <math>Q = 2 ARC</math> method where—<math>Q</math> = total runoff in cubic feet per second, <math>A</math> = drainage area in acres, <math>R</math> = rainfall intensity, and <math>C</math> = coefficient factor.</li> <li>(2) Determined the culvert size and the number of pipes from available resources.</li> <li>(3) Repaired the upstream head wall using sandbags, timber, or rock.</li> <li>(4) Ensured that the culvert extended downstream a minimum of 61 centimeters beyond the toe of the slope.</li> </ul> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>f. Freed the landing strip, the taxiway, and the apron of debris that could cause aircraft engine damage.</li> <li>g. Freed the landing strip, the taxiway, and the apron of ice and snow.</li> <li>h. Maintained and repaired the airfield membrane and matting.</li> </ul> <p>* 4. The company commander submits status reports to the battalion according to unit standing operating procedure (SOP).</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
052-243-1506	Classify a Soil Using the Unified Soil Classification System
052-252-1036	Produce Concrete with the M5 Concrete Mobile Mixer
052-252-3055	Direct Employment of an M5 Concrete Mobile Mixer
052-253-1049	Roll Material With a 9-Wheel, Self-Propelled Roller
052-253-1055	Roll Material with a Steel Wheel Roller
052-253-1059	Pressure Fill a Water Distributor
052-253-1060	Spray an Area Using a Water Distributor
052-253-1206	Backfill an Area Using a Small-Emplacement Excavator (SEE)
052-254-1038	Construct a Stockpile With a Crawler Tractor
052-254-1040	Spread a Stockpile With a Crawler Tractor
052-254-1042	Level Fill Material in a Fill Area With the Angle Blade of the Crawler Tractor
052-254-1043	Push Load the Scraper With a Crawler Tractor

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
052-254-1049	Rip Material With a Crawler Tractor
052-254-1052	Construct a V Ditch With a Motorized Grader
052-254-1055	Spread Piles of Loose Material With a Motorized Grader
052-254-1058	Construct a Stockpile With a Scoop Loader
052-254-1059	Excavate With a Scoop Loader
052-254-1060	Load a Haul Unit With a Scoop Loader
052-254-1069	Excavate Material From an Area With a Motorized Scraper
052-254-1070	Spread Fill Material With a Motorized Scraper
052-254-1075	Construct a Stockpile With a Deployable Universal Combat Earthmover (DEUCE)
052-254-1076	Spread a Stockpile With the Deployable Universal Combat Earthmover (DEUCE)
052-254-2044	Final Grade an Area with the Motorized Grader
052-256-3020	Interpret a Construction Print
052-256-3021	Interpret Construction Grade Stakes
052-256-3041	Direct Soils Stabilization Operations
052-256-3042	Direct Drainage Operations
052-256-3043	Direct Crawler Tractor Operations
052-256-3044	Direct Motorized Scraper Operations
052-256-3045	Direct Motor Grader Operations
052-256-3046	Direct Compaction Operations
052-256-3047	Direct Scoop Loader Operations
052-256-3048	Direct Utility Tractor Operations
052-256-3052	Interpret a Critical Path Method (CPM)
052-256-3054	Direct Runway/Bomb Crater Repairs
052-256-3055	Direct the Construction of a Helipad
052-256-3065	Direct Equipment Operations Using the Laserplane Leveling System
052-256-4143	Schedule Work in a Construction Project

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-1-0081	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD)
05-2-0018	Conduct Report Procedures
05-3-1008	Conduct Minesweeping Operations
05-3-3006	Establish Jobsite Security
19-1-2001	Coordinate Area Security Operations
19-1-2203	Direct Site Security Operations

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** Company Headquarters

**TASK:** Plan or Direct Aerial Logistics Operations (05-2-1054)  
 (FM 90-4) (FM 1-100)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element has been conducting combat operations in support of a maneuver infantry battalion. The element needs additional supplies and material to sustain combat operations and provide continuous support to the maneuver elements. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element staff determines the logistical support necessary to sustain operations and is prepared to receive an aerial resupply at the time and location specified. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader and staff (executive officer [XO], first sergeant [1SG], and supply sergeant) determine the logistical support necessary to sustain operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Analyzed current and future missions with input from key noncommissioned officers (NCOs) and leaders.</li> <li>b. Determined the anticipated ammunition, supply, and material requirements.</li> <li>c. Determined the type and quantity of supplies to be requested.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Compared requirements with existing inventories.</li> <li>(2) Considered the resupply timetable.</li> <li>(3) Reviewed logistics status (LOGSTAT) reports and supply requests.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>* 2. The element leader selects the drop zone (DZ) or landing zone (LZ).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the location was near the unit command post (CP) and was defensible.</li> <li>b. Ensured that landing the aircraft would not pose additional risk to the helicopter or crew.</li> <li>c. Ensured that the location was secure from enemy direct and indirect fire.</li> <li>d. Ensured that the supplies could be quickly transported by personnel or equipment away from the site.</li> <li>e. Ensured that the DZ or LZ was large enough to accommodate incoming aircraft and supplies. Ensured that the—                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Diameter was 35 meters during the day and 50 meters at night for observation helicopters (OHs) and utility helicopters (UHs).</li> <li>(2) Dimensions were 100 meters long and 35 meters wide during the day and 150 meters long and 100 meters wide at night for cargo helicopters (CHs).</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>* 3. The element leader designates a reconnaissance element to conduct a reconnaissance of the selected LZ if the resupply aircraft must land or the loads are externally rigged and ensures that it meets the mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian consideration (METT-TC) factors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Verified that the DZ or LZ could accommodate resupply with minimal effort.</li> <li>b. Ensured that the DZ or LZ met the following criteria:                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Was large enough to allow the aircraft to maneuver (LZ only).</li> <li>(2) Could be easily identified from the air.</li> <li>(3) Was secured from enemy direct and indirect fire.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(4) Was secured by a company-sized element.</p> <p>(5) Was located near the unit location, objective, or route.</p> <p>(6) Was firm enough to support the weight of the resupply aircraft (LZ only).</p> <p>(7) Was free of tree stumps or other objects that could puncture the bottom of the aircraft or damage sling-loaded cargo. Marked items that could not be removed with panel markers, red lights, or other field-expedient markers.</p> <p>(8) Was free of loose debris that could damage aircraft engines.</p> <p>(9) Had a ground slope of less than 8° (LZ only).</p> <p>(10) Had approach and departure ends free of tall trees, telephone lines, power lines, or similar obstacles that could interfere with aircraft landings or liftoffs. An obstacle ratio of 10 to 1 was used (a landing point required 100 feet of horizontal clearance from a 10-foot-tall tree if the aircraft must approach or depart directly over the tree).</p> <p>c. Determined the amount of engineer assets required to prepare the LZ or DZ.</p> <p>d. Coordinated with the battalion Operations and Training Officer (U.S. Army) (S3) for indirect-fire support at the LZ or DZ if needed.</p> <p>* 4. The XO requests aerial resupply.</p> <p>a. Prepared the request with the following information:</p> <p>(1) Delivery time.</p> <p>(2) Location of the DZ or LZ.</p> <p>(3) Desired method (airdropped or airlanded).</p> <p>(4) Type and quantity of supplies.</p> <p>b. Submitted the request to the battalion Supply Officer (U.S. Army) (S4) section.</p> <p>* 5. The element leader organizes the company to receive an aerial supply.</p> <p>a. Designated elements to secure the LZ or DZ.</p> <p>b. Designated a recovery and distribution element.</p> <p>6. The security element secures the LZ or DZ.</p> <p>a. Searched the area to ensure that it was free of the enemy.</p> <p>b. Established mutually supporting positions that provided observation, cover, concealment, fields of fire, and cover for the most likely mounted and dismounted avenues of approach to the LZ or DZ.</p> <p>c. Ensured that the positions were far enough out to provide early warning of enemy actions.</p> <p>d. Employed hasty obstacles, as required (such as claymore mines and roadblocks).</p> <p>* 7. The element leader identifies the operational area to the platoon leader in charge of the recovery and distribution element.</p> <p>a. Identified the load impact area or the helicopter landing point.</p> <p>b. Identified a distribution point for the supplies.</p> <p>8. The element prepares the LZ or DZ after the area has been secured.</p> <p>a. Removed all obstacles, if possible, and marked those that could not be easily seen during the day. Used red panels or other easily seen objects over the obstruction during the day and used red lights at night.</p> <p>b. Removed loose debris at the LZ that could have damaged rotor blades or aircraft engines.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Marked the load impact area or helicopter landing point in a manner identified by the element leader (for example, smoke, lights, VS-17 panels, or field-expedient markers).</p> <p>9. The element recovery and distribution team receives the supplies immediately on delivery.</p> <p>a. Moved quickly to the aircraft or airdropped load.</p> <p>b. Unloaded the aircraft, divided the load (if required), and moved it to the distribution point.</p> <p>c. Concealed the LZ or DZ by removing any items that could have identified its use for resupply (recovered markers, covered aircraft tracks, and removed rigging material and equipment).</p> <p>*10. The element leader controls the breakdown of the supplies at the distribution point according to the allocation plan.</p> <p>a. Ensured that supplies were distributed tactically.</p> <p>b. Ensured that security was maintained throughout the operation.</p> <p>c. Ensured that the unit continued its mission.</p> <p>*11. The element leader reports the receipt of the supplies to higher headquarters (HQ) on completion of the delivery operation and disposes of the salvaged containers, parachutes, cargo nets, and pallets according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
113-587-2070	Operate SINCGARS Single-Channel (SC)
113-587-2071	Operate SINCGARS Frequency Hopping (FH) (Net Members)
171-145-0004	Prepare/Send Logistical Status Reports Using FBCB2

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-3-7021	Conduct Resupply Operations
10-2-0319.05-T01A	Receive Airdrop Resupply

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Three Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Company Headquarters Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters

**TASK:** Coordinate for Organizational Maintenance Support (05-2-1126)  
 (DA PAM 738-750) (AR 725-50) (AR 750-43)  
 (DA FORM 2404) (DA FORM 2406) (DA FORM 5988-E)  
 (FM 4-30.3)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** A unit is performing continuous tactical operations in support of a maneuver force. The absence of maintenance capabilities requires the unit to coordinate for organizational maintenance support in order to sustain the unit equipment. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The commander or his designated representative coordinates for and receives organizational maintenance support necessary to support continuous operations.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The element leader identifies the need for organizational maintenance support.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reviewed the Department of the Army (DA) Form 2404 (Equipment Inspection and Maintenance Worksheet) or the DA Form 5988-E (Equipment Inspection Maintenance Worksheet) from the subordinate elements and key leaders.</li> <li>b. Determined if the equipment needed to be serviced, recovered, repaired, or evacuated to the unit maintenance collection point (UMCP).</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The element leader reviews the operation order (OPORD) and determines whether the supported unit or the battalion will provide support according to the command support relationship.</li> <li>* 3. The element leader requests support.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Included the following information in the request:                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) The location of the equipment and the routes to the site.</li> <li>(2) The extent of the damage or the type of service required.</li> <li>(3) The parts needed to repair the equipment, if known.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Submitted the request within 1 hour of notification that the equipment was nonmission capable (NMC).</li> </ul> </li> <li>4. Unit personnel support and assist the maintenance team in the repair or evacuation of equipment.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided personnel support as needed.</li> <li>b. Provided logistical support to include rations; and petroleum, oil, and lubricants (POL).</li> </ul> </li> <li>5. The unit maintenance officer provides a DA Form 2406 (Material Condition Status Report) that gives the equipment status and condition to the supporting unit.</li> <li>* 6. The element leader coordinates with the supporting maintenance activity for the pickup of nonmission capable supply (NMCS) or maintenance equipment.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 7. The element leader inspects the vehicles to ensure that the repairs were completed and that the equipment was mission-capable.		
* 8. The element leader submitted an updated status report to higher headquarters (HQ).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
091-499-3013	Review Equipment Inspection and Maintenance Worksheet (DA Form 2404)
091-CLT-3009	Supervise Maintenance Operations
091-CLT-4006	Coordinate Support for the Maintenance Platoon/Section
113-587-2070	Operate SINCGARS Single-Channel (SC)
113-587-2071	Operate SINCGARS Frequency Hopping (FH) (Net Members)

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-0017	Integrate Augmentation Support
05-2-0018	Conduct Report Procedures
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Equipment Section

**TASK:** Conduct Combat Refueling Operations (05-2-7000)  
 (FM 10-67-1)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** A unit is conducting refueling operations. The unit is refueling to continue the momentum of operations. The unit has designated a refueling location. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit refuels vehicles according to the schedule, without effecting ongoing operations at the designated location. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The executive officer (XO) or the first sergeant (1SG) organizes a refueling operation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated with the next higher supply activity for bulk-fuel supply, according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).</li> <li>b. Established a refueling schedule for engineer equipment (high-consumption vehicles). Modified the schedule, as needed, to ensure that the company accomplished critical missions.</li> <li>c. Coordinated with supporting units for additional refueling support, as needed.</li> <li>d. Selected a refueling point that was central to the work sites, had good cover and concealment locations, and good access and exit routes.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: The digital units use either frequency-modulated (FM) or digital systems like the Army Battle Command System (ABCS) to update the digital overlay of the refueling location and send the location to the elements requiring fuel and supporting units.</b></p> <p>2. The refueling personnel support the unit according to the established schedule.</p> <p>3. The refueling personnel establish the fuel point.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Grounded the fuel truck.</li> <li>b. Positioned fire extinguishers in a readily available location.</li> <li>c. Established traffic control patterns to minimize congestion.</li> </ul> <p>4. The element conducts refueling operations.</p> <p><b>NOTE: Actions at the refueling point regarding petroleum, oils, and lubricants (POL) distribution is provided in the operation order (OPORD).</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Turned off the vehicle engine.</li> <li>b. Grounded the fuel truck to the refueling vehicle.</li> <li>c. Issued packaged POL, as needed.</li> <li>d. Maintained dispersion based on the terrain with a minimum spacing of 50 meters.</li> <li>e. Maintained noise and light discipline.</li> <li>f. Observed safety procedures.</li> </ul>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 5. The XO or the 1SG coordinates bulk refueling for the fuel truck. a. Identified the location of bulk-refueling points. b. Coordinated for additional bulk refueling, if needed. c. Restocked onboard packaged POL.  * 6. The element leader monitors the refueling process.  * 7. The XO or the 1SG updates the fuel forecast with the battalion task force (TF) Supply Officer (U.S. Army) (S4).  * 8. The officer in charge (OIC) or the noncommissioned officer in charge (NCOIC) submit reports according to the unit SOP.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-0080	Coordinate the Location of Class IV and Class V Supply Points
05-3-7004	Receive a Logistics Package (LOGPAC)

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Company Headquarters Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters

**TASK:** Receive and Distribute Throughput Supplies (05-2-7003)  
 (FM 63-1) (FM 4-93.4) (FM 63-2)  
 (FM 63-20) (FM 63-21) (FM 63-3)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is supporting a maneuver force. The element Supply Officer (U.S. Army) (S4) requests supplies to support the unit obstacle plan and arranges for the supplies to be distributed to the task force (TF) area. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element receives and distributes Class IV/Class V (engineer) throughput supplies to sustain operations, without impeding the mission accomplishment. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The element receives throughput supplies.</li> <li>* 2. The executive officer (XO) or the first sergeant (1SG) determines the supply and linkup point locations.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the locations were covered, concealed, and convenient to the work sites.</li> <li>b. Identified a linkup point with the supporting combat service support (CSS) element. Ensured that the location was easily identifiable and located on or near a main supply route (MSR).</li> <li>c. Designated a guide at the linkup point.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. The element off-loads the supplies.</li> <li>* 4. The XO or the 1SG plans coordination.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated materials-handling equipment (MHE).</li> <li>b. Coordinated troop labor, if needed.</li> </ol> </li> <li>5. The element loads the supplies on the vehicles or establishes a holding area.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated for additional trucks, if needed.</li> <li>b. Designated parking or holding areas that allowed for dispersion, camouflage, cover and concealment, and good access and exit routes.</li> </ol> </li> <li>6. The element establishes control measures for the movement.</li> <li>7. The element establishes a storage site to protect the supplies from the elements and provide security.</li> <li>8. The element distributes the supplies using the supply point or the unit distribution method.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used the supply point distribution method.                                     <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Identified items needed for the engineer element tasks.</li> <li>(2) Established a pickup schedule.</li> <li>(3) Notified the subordinate elements of the time and place of issue.</li> <li>(4) Organized available MHE, if required.</li> <li>(5) Issued supplies.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(6) Obtained new requests from the subordinate elements. b. Used the unit distribution method. (1) Identified items needed for the engineer element tasks. (2) Established a resupply sequence. (3) Uploaded the supply vehicles using reverse loading. (4) Established a linkup point and time with the requesting elements. If the elements were in the battlefield or TF area, coordinated with the battalion or TF S4 for logistics package (LOGPAC) operations. (5) Issued supplies. (6) Obtained new requests from the subordinate elements. <b>NOTE: Digital units can forward supply requests through the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System to higher headquarters (HQ). The locations for issue are plotted on the digital overlay.</b>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-3003	Defend a Convoy Against a Ground Attack
07-2-1301.05-T01A	Conduct a Convoy

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE****SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE****OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** Conduct Reconnaissance (07-OPFOR-0010)

**CONDITION:** Red forces are conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The Red force is directed to obtain tactical information pertaining to Blue force location, disposition, intent, and or activities. All assigned Red force equipment and personnel are available. The Red force has engineer support available.

**STANDARD:** The Red force conducts the reconnaissance mission by penetrating Blue force outposts with mounted or dismounted patrols and obtaining and reporting required information IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The Red force maintains focus; continuity; aggressiveness; timeliness; camouflage, concealment, and deception; accuracy; and reliability. Red force reconnaissance elements complete the reconnaissance mission undetected.

Note: During training exercises, the Blue force commander or leader should select the size of the Red force element based on threat doctrine.

**TASK:** Conduct Counterreconnaissance (07-OPFOR-0011)

**CONDITION:** Red forces are conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The Red force is ordered to deny information to Blue force reconnaissance elements by active and passive means. All necessary personnel and equipment are available.

**STANDARD:** The Red force conducts the counter reconnaissance IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The Red force conceals friendly information through operational security (OPSEC) measures and engages and destroys Blue force reconnaissance elements.

Note: During training exercises, the Blue force commander/leader should select the size of the Red force element based on threat doctrine.

**TASK:** Conduct An Attack (07-OPFOR-0012)

**CONDITION:** Red forces are conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. Red forces have determined that Blue forces are occupying defensive positions, conducting convoy operations, occupying an assembly or rear area, or are otherwise susceptible to attack. All assigned Red force equipment and personnel are available. Red forces have indirect fire support available.

**STANDARD:** The Red force conducts the attack IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The Red force executes the attack by completely neutralizing, destroying, deceiving, or disrupting Blue forces at the designated time and location specified in the operation order and or commander's guidance.

Note: During training exercises, the Blue force commander or leader should select the size of the Red force element based on threat doctrine.

**TASK:** Conduct A Raid (07-OPFOR-0013)

**CONDITION:** Red forces are conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. Red forces are occupying an objective rally point (ORP) with orders to conduct a raid against Blue force elements. All assigned Red force equipment and personnel are available. The Red force has indirect fire support available.

**STANDARD:** The Red force executes the raid IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The Red force uses surprise, firepower, and maneuver to destroy Blue force position(s), capture prisoners, capture equipment, or free prisoners friendly to the Red force. The Red force avoids decisive engagement and withdraws all personnel from the objective(s) within the specified time. Red forces obtain all required priority intelligence requirements (PIR).

Note: During training exercises, the Blue force commander or leader should select the size of the Red force element based on threat doctrine.

**TASK:** Conduct Terrorist and Saboteur Attacks (07-OPFOR-0016)

**CONDITION:** Red forces are conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The Red force has dispatched small teams into Blue force rear area to disrupt CSS operations. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The red force has indirect fire support available.

**STANDARD:** The Red force locates Blue force rear support bases and command and control (C2) facilities. The Red force destroys supplies and equipment, delays and disrupts CSS operations, and or inflicts casualties through probes in accordance with (IAW) the operation order and or commander's guidance.

**TASK:** Conduct Electronic Combat (07-OPFOR-0021)

**CONDITION:** Red forces are conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. Blue forces are conducting command and control of operations using digital equipment, radio, messenger, or other tactical communications.

**STANDARD:** The Red force conducts electronic combat in accordance with (IAW) the operation order and or commander's guidance. The Red force employs signals reconnaissance, electronic jamming, electronic protection measures (EPM), destruction, and electronic counter reconnaissance to disrupt Blue force command and control.

Note: During training exercises, the Blue force commander or leader should select the size of the Red force element based on threat doctrine.

**TASK:** Evade/Resist Capture (07-OPFOR-0024)

**CONDITION:** Red forces are conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. Red force Soldiers are being overrun or conducting covert operations against the Blue force that makes them susceptible to capture.

**STANDARD:** The Red force evades/resists capture. If captured, Red force personnel refrain from divulging information about their operations/unit and attempt to escape using every means available. Note: During training exercises, the Blue force commander/leader can select the size of the Red force element his unit will face based on current doctrine.

**TASK:** Conduct Biological/Chemical Operations (07-OPFOR-0027)

**CONDITION:** Red forces are conducting defensive or offensive operations independently or as part of a larger force. A decision has been made to employ biological or chemical weapons. Wind and weather conditions are right for the employment of biological or chemical weapons. All assigned Red force equipment and personnel are available.

**STANDARD:** The Red force conducts biological and or chemical operations IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The Red force attacks the Blue force with nerve, blood, blister, choking, incapacitant, and or irritant agents or pathogenic microbes and or microorganism toxins. The Red force delivers agents and or toxins using aircraft, multiple rocket launchers (MRLs), artillery, mines, rockets, missiles, and or special operations forces. The Red force causes disruption of Blue force operations, suspension of operations, and or casualties.

Note: During training exercises, the Blue force commander or leader should select the size of the Red force element based on threat doctrine.

**TASK:** Conduct Air Attack (07-OPFOR-0029)

**CONDITION:** Red forces are conducting offensive operations independently or as part of a larger force. Blue force positions, formations, or Soldiers have been identified and are susceptible to air attack. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. Red force fixed wing combat aircraft and attack helicopters are available to provide aerial fire support to ground maneuver forces.

**STANDARD:** The Red force executes the air attack using fixed and rotor winged aircraft IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. Blue force positions, formations, and or Soldiers are destroyed, delayed, or forced to retreat.

Note: During training exercises, the Blue force commander and or leader should select the size of the Red force element based on threat doctrine.

**TASK:** Employ Deception Measures (07-OPFOR-0030)

**CONDITION:** Red forces are conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. Red forces are ordered to employ deception measures to confuse Blue forces and to prevent them from determining Red force intentions or activities. All assigned Red force equipment and personnel are available. Red forces have indirect fire, close air, and engineer support available.

**STANDARD:** The Red force employs deception measures IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The Red force constructs dummy positions; simulates troop movements by such means as use of civilian vehicles to portray movement to radar or marching refugees to portray movement of troops in the rear; conducts feints or demonstrations; employs manipulative, simulative, and imitative deception electronic measures; and or avoids patterns or obvious movements that reveal the time or intent of an operation.

Note: During training exercises, the Blue force commander and or leader should select the size of the Red force element based on threat doctrine.

**TASK:** Conduct Reconnaissance (Revised) (07-OPFOR-0078)

**CONDITION:** Red forces are conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The Red force is directed to obtain tactical information pertaining to Blue force location, disposition, intent, and or activities. All assigned Red force equipment and personnel are available. The Red force has engineer support available.

**STANDARD:** The Red force conducts the reconnaissance mission by penetrating Blue force outposts with mounted or dismounted patrols and obtaining and reporting required information IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The Red force maintains focus; continuity; aggressiveness; timeliness; camouflage, concealment, and deception; accuracy; and reliability. Red force reconnaissance elements complete the reconnaissance mission undetected.

Note: During training exercises, the Blue force commander or leader should select the size of the Red force element based on threat doctrine.

**TASK:** DISRUPT ASSEMBLY AREA ACTIVITIES (07-OPFOR-1001)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is in the process of or has already occupied an assembly area and is conducting assembly area activities.

**STANDARD:** Assembly area activities are halted or disrupted by an air attack, ground attack, sniper operations, special operations etc.

**TASK:** MAINTAIN CONTACT (07-OPFOR-1011)

**CONDITION:** OPFOR element is tactically engaged with enemy base defense forces. Enemy forces are withdrawing under pressure.

**STANDARD:** Engage enemy forces decisively. Advance own unit or forces as enemy withdraws. Inflict casualties.

**TASK:** DEFEND A BATTLE POSITION (07-OPFOR-1100)

**CONDITION:** The OPFOR has conducted a hasty or deliberate occupation of a battle position (BP), that may or may not be supported by obstacles. It observes an advancing enemy or is alerted to an enemy unit by a spot report from higher headquarters. Automatic weapons and antiarmor systems are available.

**STANDARD:** 1. The OPFOR completes all defensive preparations NLT the time specified in the order. 2. The OPFOR main body is not surprised by the enemy. 3. The OPFOR destroys, blocks, or canalizes the enemy unit when it enters the engagement area. 4. The OPFOR retains control of the designated terrain and forces the withdrawal of the enemy unit. 5. Prevents destruction of obstacles.

**TASK:** Execute Actions On Contact (07-OPFOR-1101)

**CONDITION:** Red forces are conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The Red force makes contact with Blue forces visually or by receiving direct or indirect fire. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The red force has indirect fire support available. T

**STANDARD:** The Red force executes actions on contact in accordance with (IAW) the operation order and/or commander's guidance. Red forces execute a hasty defense and fix, destroy, or force Blue forces to withdraw.

Note: During training exercises, the Blue force commander/leader should select the size of the Red force element based on threat doctrine.

**TASK:** Defend A Building (Revised) (07-OPFOR-1110)

**CONDITION:** Red forces are conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The Red force has received an order to defend a building. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The Red force has automatic weapons, antiarmor systems, and indirect fire support available.

**STANDARD:** The Red force defends the building according to the operation order and/or commander's guidance. The Red force prevents the Blue force from isolating and entering the building. The Red force blocks or canalizes the Blue force to destroy them or force them to withdraw. The Red force retains control of the designated building or counterattacks to regain and maintain control.

NOTE: During training exercises, the Blue force commander/leader can select the size of the Red force element his unit will face based on current doctrine.

**TASK:** Conduct an Ambush (07-OPFOR-1112)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) are operating separately or as part of a larger unit. The OPFOR is ordered to conduct an ambush along the enemy's lines of communications. The OPFOR has designated priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements (IR). Light automatic weapons, light mortars, and antiarmor systems are available.



**STANDARD:** 1. The OPFOR emplaces the ambush not later than the time specified in the order. 2. The OPFOR surprises the enemy. 3. The OPFOR engages, fixes, and/or destroys the specified enemy element in the kill zone. OR 4. The OPFOR engages and destroys all of the specified vehicles in the kill zone. 5. The OPFOR withdraws all personnel and equipment from the objective, on order. 6. All specified PIR and IR are obtained from the ambush site.

**TASK:** Disrupt Command And Control (07-OPFOR-1113)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is preparing for or conducting operations.

**STANDARD:** Command and control is disrupted by interdicting enemy lines of communications, disrupting the decision making process, and/or disrupting the employment of forces.

**TASK:** CONDUCT MRC(+) ATTACK (07-OPFOR-1115)

**CONDITION:** A reinforced motorized rifle company (MRC) conducting offensive operations is on the march or in direct contact with an enemy unit. The OPFOR encounters or receives a spot report locating an enemy unit. Battalion-level indirect fire support assets and armored vehicles are available.

**STANDARD:** 1. The OPFOR exploits the platoon's flanks, gaps, and weaknesses; inflicts heavy casualties; and destroys the enemy unit's vehicles and equipment. 2. The OPFOR fixes and destroys the enemy unit before it can withdraw its combat elements. 3. The OPFOR bypasses or penetrates the enemy unit with a squad or more.

**TASK:** Attack (07-OPFOR-1118)

**CONDITION:** Red forces are conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The Red force encounters or receives a spot report locating a platoon to company size element. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The Red force has battalion-level direct and indirect fire support, automatic weapons, and antiarmor systems available. The Blue force has indirect fire support and close air assets available.

**STANDARD:** The Red force moves elements through the company area of responsibility, makes contact with the main body, and forces the platoon to displace and or withdraw. The Red forces gain intelligence requirements (IR) and or attack the main body before the screening force gives the warning. Red forces place direct and or indirect fire on the main body.

NOTE: During training exercises, the Blue force commander or leader should select the size of the Red force element based on threat doctrine.

**TASK:** Attack (07-OPFOR-1120)

**CONDITION:** Red forces are conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. The Red force is ordered to execute an attack. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The Red force has indirect fire, automatic weapons, and close air support available. The Blue force has at or near 100% strength and has indirect fire support assets available.

**STANDARD:** The Red force executes the attack IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. Red forces are not detected by Blue forces. Red forces prevent Blue forces from fixing their position(s). Red forces penetrate the defense(s), force the Blue forces to withdraw, and seize the objective.

Note: During training exercises, the Blue force commander or leader should select the size of the Red force element based on threat doctrine.

**TASK:** GATHER INTELLIGENCE (07-OPFOR-1122)

**CONDITION:** The OPFOR conducts tactical operations to gather intelligence.

**STANDARD:** 1. The OPFOR locates 70 percent or more of battalion elements. 2. The OPFOR reports the battalion's intentions. 3. The OPFOR reports the battalion's strength, plus/minus 10 percent, or echelon of the unit (platoon, company, battalion). 4. The OPFOR obtains specified PIR on friendly units. 5. The OPFOR reports all information to higher headquarters.

**TASK:** DISRUPT LOGISTICAL SUPPORT (07-OPFOR-1123)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting logistical support operations.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR delays resupply and maintenance through probes and ambushes by preventing the unit from being prepared (by the time specified) to conduct operations.

**TASK:** Defend a Danger Area (07-OPFOR-1135)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is crossing an open area, road or trail, minefield, stream, or wire obstacle or he is passing a friendly position or village. The danger area is observed and covered by friendly fires.

**STANDARD:** The unit detects the crossing/passing decisively engages the enemy while he is in the danger area. The unit destroys or forces the enemy to withdraw.

**NOTE:** During training exercises, the commander/leader can select the size of the OPFOR element his unit will face based on his unit's tactical proficiency.

**TASK:** DISRUPT ARMORED MOVEMENT (07-OPFOR-1140)

**CONDITION:** The OPFOR platoon/squad is ordered to disrupt enemy armored movement. The OPFOR is equipped with mines, antitank guns, and ATGMs. The OPFOR also has indirect fire and CAS available. The OPFOR may operate separately or as part of a larger unit.

**STANDARD:** 1. The OPFOR prevents the platoon from employing the armored forces. 2. The OPFOR fixes the platoon.

**TASK:** Disrupt Movement (07-OPFOR-1303)

**CONDITION:** Red forces are conducting offensive operations independently or as part of a larger force. Situational awareness indicates Blue forces are conducting convoys and tactical road marches in the area. Tactical movement, airmobile operations, and or amphibious operations and water crossings have also been noted. All assigned Red forces equipment and personnel are on hand and equipment is operational. Blue forces are at or near 100% strength and have indirect fires support available.

**STANDARD:** Red forces attack Blue forces along their route of march with mines, obstacles, sniper fire, or special operations forces. The Blue force is destroyed or forced to deviate from its route(s). Blue forces do not reach their intended destination.

**Note:** During training exercises, the Blue force commander and or leader should select the size of the Red force element based on threat doctrine.

**TASK:** CAPTURE COMPANY EQUIPMENT (07-OPFOR-1311)

**CONDITION:** The unit is conducting mounted or dismounted presence patrols. OPFOR elements ambush the presence patrol and capture company equipment.

**STANDARD:** 1. The OPFOR captures company tactical vehicles before destruction. 2. The OPFOR captures company spare parts before unit can destroy them.

**TASK:** CONDUCT TERRORIST AND SABOTEUR ATTACKS (07-OPFOR-1401)

**CONDITION:** The OPFOR is operating separately or as part of a larger element. The OPFOR are conducting unconventional operations to support future offensive maneuvers. The OPFOR infiltrates small teams in the enemy's rear area to attack command and control (C2) and CSS operations. Light automatic weapons and antiarmor systems are available.

**STANDARD:** 1. The OPFOR locates C2 and CSS sites in the sector. 2. The OPFOR delays or disrupts CSS operations through probes and raids. 3. The OPFOR infiltrates C2 and CSS bases to conduct sabotage and terrorist operations. 4. The OPFOR teams are not compromised during infiltration to their target(s).

**TASK:** Infiltrate/Exfiltrate Enemy Lines/Positions (07-OPFOR-1402)

**CONDITION:** The enemy has established roadblocks/checkpoints or is occupying an assembly area, rear area, patrol base, or defensive position. The unit has been ordered to infiltrate/exfiltrate enemy's lines/positions.

**STANDARD:** The unit infiltrates/exfiltrates enemy lines/positions without being detected in accordance with commander's guidance.

**TASK:** Conduct Obstacle Breach (Revised) (07-OPFOR-1404)

**CONDITION:** Red forces are conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. Red forces are on the offense and encounter a minefield or other obstacle that it cannot bypass. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. Red forces have indirect fire and close air support available.

**STANDARD:** The Red force executes the breach IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. Red force engineers conduct reconnaissance of the obstacle and the combined arms unit breaches the obstacle.

Note: The Movement Support Detachment (MSD) has the task of mine clearing during the march.

Note: During training exercises, the Blue force commander/leader should select the size of the Red force element based on threat doctrine.

**TASK:** COUNTER ECCM (07-OPFOR-1414)

**CONDITION:** The OPFOR discovers enemy ECCM and takes action.

**STANDARD:** 1. OPFOR locates battalion frequency; initiates ECM. 2. OPFOR reacts to battalion ECCM. 3. OPFOR disrupts battalion communication capabilities.

**TASK:** Disrupt Mission Preparation (07-OPFOR-1601)

**CONDITION:** Red forces are in the process of preparing for an upcoming mission as part of a larger force. The Red force is disrupted by a hasty attack, air attack, indirect fire, or employment of special operations forces. All Red forces personnel and equipment are available. The red force has indirect fire support available.

**STANDARD:** The Red force completes mission preparation in accordance with (IAW) the operation order and/or commander's guidance.

Note: During training exercises, the commander/leader can select the size of the OPFOR element his unit will face based on his unit's tactical proficiency.

**TASK:** DETECT GUIDES (07-OPFOR-1873)

**CONDITION:** An OPFOR element is positioned along the Guides' route.

**STANDARD:** 1. The OPFOR detects the scout guides. 2. The OPFOR identifies the movement route from the linkup point to the release point. 3. The OPFOR disrupts the completion of the linkup. 4. The OPFOR engages the guided unit during movement. 5. The OPFOR inflicts more than 10 percent casualties.

**TASK:** Maintain Operation Security (07-OPFOR-1972)

**CONDITION:** The Blue Force is conducting reconnaissance/surveillance operations to gain information on the Red Force.

**STANDARD:** The Red Force maintains operation security by ensuring noise, litter, and light discipline is enforced.

**TASK:** CONDUCT A DEFENSE (07-OPFOR-3003)

**CONDITION:** The OPFOR conducts company (+) defense.

**STANDARD:** 1. The OPFOR can determine time and location of the attack. 2. The OPFOR fires on the battalion task force and stops the lead company(s). 3. The OPFOR delays the battalion task force.

**TASK:** PERFORM TACTICAL MOVEMENT AND/OR ZONE RECONNAISSANCE (07-OPFOR-3014)

**CONDITION:** The OPFOR is conducting tactical movement along an avenue of approach through an enemy security zone. It may or may not be attempting to infiltrate the zone for the purpose of conducting a reconnaissance of the enemy's main body forces.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR completes movement through the zone and/or completes its reconnaissance mission without being detected or destroyed by enemy forces.

**TASK:** Conduct A Counterattack (Revised) (07-OPFOR-3104)

**CONDITION:** Red forces are conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. Red forces have been ordered to counterattack following a disrupted or halted Blue force penetration attempt or while the Blue force is consolidating and reorganizing on the objective. All assigned Red force equipment and personnel are available. Red forces have indirect fire and engineer support available. Red forces have gained air superiority.

**STANDARD:** The Red force conducts the counterattack IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The Red force uses short but intense artillery and air preparation, attacks Blue force flanks or rear, and or exploits gaps and ruptures in Blue force formations. The Red force prevents consolidation and reorganization and evacuation of wounded Blue force personnel. The Red force gains/regains terrain and destroys or captures remaining Blue force personnel and equipment.

Note: During training exercises, the Blue force commander/leaders should select the size of the Red force element based on threat doctrine.

**TASK:** Counter Air Movement/Air Assault Operations (07-OPFOR-3126)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting an air movement or air assault operation to reinforce elements or to mass combat power at a particular place and time on the battlefield. Attack helicopter assets may be part of the operation.

**STANDARD:** The unit surprises and engages the platoon at the landing zone (LZ) or the pickup zone (PZ). The air movement or air assault operation is disrupted and enemy forces are destroyed or forced to withdraw.

**TASK:** CONDUCT COUNTERRECONNAISSANCE (07-OPFOR-3405)

**CONDITION:** The OPFOR is ordered to conduct tactical operations along a suspected enemy route. The enemy is operating along lines of communication or avenues of approach and can be reinforced with an armor platoon, a mechanized infantry platoon, air support, and/or indirect fires.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR denies the enemy from collecting and reporting data of the suspected route IAW the commander's intent.

**TASK:** ATTACK (07-OPFOR-3419)

**CONDITION:** The OPFOR is conducting offensive operations and has been ordered to attack to destroy the enemy and/or seize terrain. Based on analysis of the terrain, enemy disposition, and the number and type of enemy vehicles/weapons, the OPFOR has the capability to destroy the enemy.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR executes the attack, destroys the enemy, and/or seizes the designated terrain.

**TASK:** COUNTER HELICOPTER MOVEMENT (07-OPFOR-3426)

**CONDITION:** The OPFOR is ordered to conduct tactical operations to counter helicopter movement.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR engages and fixes enemy elements at the LZ or PZ and/or prevents helicopters from landing at the LZ or PZ.

**TASK:** CONDUCT AN MRC(+) ATTACK (07-OPFOR-3429)

**CONDITION:** The OPFOR, a motorized rifle company (MRC)(+), is on the march or in direct contact with enemy force.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR prevents the enemy from withdrawing its combat elements and bypasses or penetrates the enemy main body with a squad or larger element.

**TASK:** EXECUTE A HASTY ATTACK (07-OPFOR-4008)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is in the process of consolidating, reorganizing, or is moving and does not have situational awareness.

**STANDARD:** The enemy is destroyed, disrupted, or caused to retreat and the objective is seized.

**TASK:** DEFEND A BATTLE POSITION (07-OPFOR-4100)

**CONDITION:** The OPFOR has conducted a hasty or deliberate occupation of a BP, which may or may not be supported by obstacles. It observes an advancing enemy or is alerted to an enemy unit by a SPOTREP from higher headquarters.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR destroys, blocks, or canalizes the enemy force when it enters the engagement area. On order, the OPFOR displaces in accordance with the commander's intent before being overrun by the enemy force in the sector.

**TASK:** Employ Deception Measures (Revised) (07-OPFOR-4200)

**CONDITION:** Red forces are conducting operations independently or as part of a larger force. Red forces are ordered to employ deception measures to confuse Blue forces and to prevent them from determining Red force intentions or activities. All assigned Red force equipment and personnel are available. Red forces have indirect fire, close air, and engineer support available.

**STANDARD:** The Red force employs deception measures IAW the OPORD and or commander's guidance. The Red force constructs dummy positions; simulates troop movements by such means as use of civilian vehicles to portray movement to radar or marching refugees to portray movement of troops in the rear; conducts feints or demonstrations; employs manipulative, simulative, and imitative deception electronic measures; and or avoids patterns or obvious movements that reveal the time or intent of an operation.

Note: During training exercises, the Blue force commander/leader should select the size of the Red force element based on threat doctrine.

**TASK:** Attack (5-OPFOR-0001)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. The priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements have been obtained by OPFOR patrols. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element attempts to seize the terrain, vehicles, or equipment. 1. Develops an attack plan. 2. Surprises the main body of the enemy. 3. Initiates the attack using a scheme of maneuver that exploits enemy flanks, gaps, and weaknesses. 4. Uses covered and concealed routes to approach enemy force flanks, gaps, or weakly held areas. 5. Employs indirect fire to support the attack. 6. Penetrates enemy defenses. 7. Destroys equipment and supplies. 8. Inflicts heavy casualties. 9. Isolates the combat service support (CSS) base by blocking reinforcements. 10. Forces enemy units to displace. 11. Avoids being fixed in one position. 12. Withdraws before the CSS base is reinforced with tactical combat forces.

**TASK:** Conduct Air Attacks (5-OPFOR-0002)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element in the rear area has forwarded the positions of the enemy support sites or the locations of moving elements. The OPFOR aircraft have been dispatched to attack enemy installations or convoys.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element attempts to delay, disrupt, or damage the enemy targets by air. 1. Locates the target (support sites or convoys). 2. Makes attack runs on the designated targets. 3. Inflicts heavy damage to the selected target. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Delays moving the force for more than one hour.

**TASK:** Maintain Contact (5-OPFOR-0003)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is engaged with enemy base defense forces. The enemy forces are withdrawing under pressure.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element maintains enemy contact while the enemy withdraws. 1. Engages the enemy forces decisively. 2. Advances the OPFOR as the enemy forces withdraw. 3. Inflicts heavy casualties. 4. Captures the members of the enemy force. 5. Captures documents and equipment. 6. Safeguards captured documents, equipment, and personnel.

**TASK:** Conduct a Raid (5-OPFOR-0004)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has occupied an objective rally point and has orders to conduct a raid on a combat service support (CSS) base.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element infiltrates the enemy base and destroys all of the targets. 1. Surprises the enemy forces. 2. Assaults the support base and accomplishes the assigned tasks. 3. Destroys the specified equipment and supplies. 4. Avoids being decisively engaged. 5. Withdraws all personnel from the objective areas within the time prescribed. 6. Obtains all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) from the raid site. 7. Sustains only light casualties from enemy fire.

**TASK:** Conduct Terrorist and Saboteur Attacks (5-OPFOR-0005)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element dispatches small teams into the enemy rear area to disrupt combat service support (CSS) operations.

**STANDARD:** The enemy sustains disrupted command and control (C2), destroyed equipment and supplies, and light casualties. 1. Locates rear support bases and C2 facilities. 2. Delays and disrupts CSS operations through probes. 3. Infiltrates CSS bases to conduct sabotage and terrorist activities. 4. Inflicts light casualties. 5. Destroys supplies and equipment.

**TASK:** Conduct Sniper Operations (5-OPFOR-0006)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has assigned snipers (regular or irregular elements) in the enemy rear area along the main supply route (MSR) and near support sites.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element kills or wounds targets. 1. Sets up a well-concealed location. 2. Engages vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. 3. Kills or wounds selected targets. 4. Prevents the position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuates the area without being spotted. 6. Reports all specified priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK:** Conduct an Ambush (5-OPFOR-0007)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is moving in a convoy. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy route.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element inflicts casualties on the enemy and causes vehicle and equipment damage. 1. Prepares an ambush site before the element arrives. 2. Surprises march element forces. 3. Inflicts heavy casualties within the designated kill zone. 4. Inflicts heavy damage to vehicles and equipment within the designated kill zone. 5. Delays the march element from reaching a specified destination for a specified period of time. 6. Withdraws on order. 7. Sustains no casualties. 8. Reports actions to superiors.

**TASK:** Conduct an Attack (5-OPFOR-0008)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting tactical operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element receives orders to attack the enemy, the area of occupation, or the main supply route (MSR) with smoke.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element disrupts enemy movement and smoke operations. 1. Determines the delivery method of the smoke attack. 2. Locates the target. 3. Delivers the smoke attack downwind. 4. Attacks the enemy with smoke and surge attacks when the enemy responds to the smoke.

**TASK:** Defeat Obstacles (5-OPFOR-0009)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element encounters an obstacle that blocks the avenue of approach as it advances upon the enemy forces.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element bypasses or breaches the enemy obstacle. 1. Detects the obstacle before halting its main body. 2. Defeats the obstacle. a. Bypasses the obstacle without entering the engagement areas. b. Breaches the obstacle within 45 minutes and passes its entire force through the obstacle. 3. Does not incur degradation to the point that the mission must be discontinued.

**TASK:** Conduct an Aerial Reconnaissance (5-OPFOR-0010)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) headquarters (HQ) element requires intelligence on the locations and identification of enemy elements. An aircraft is dispatched to take photographs and make a visual inspection of the enemy rear area.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element gathers photograph intelligence of the enemy. 1. Photographs the assigned sectors. 2. Makes quick visual checks where the ceiling is low. 3. Locates enemy positions in the area, particularly support and storage bases, and command and control (C2) facilities. 4. Sustains no loss of aircraft. 5. Reports priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other information requirements to the OPFOR HQ.

**TASK:** Gather Intelligence (5-OPFOR-0011)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) small element, operating in the rear area, is planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete the plans.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element infiltrates, gathers intelligence information, and submits its findings to the command. 1. Identifies all priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements. 2. Passes through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Moves to an observation point that offers cover and concealment and is clear enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gathers all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraws from the area undetected. 6. Reports all information to the OPFOR headquarters (HQ).

**TASK:** Counter Passage of Lines (5-OPFOR-0012)

**CONDITION:** Enemy forces are in defensive positions, but they are expected to attempt passage-of-lines operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) receive orders to disrupt enemy passage-of-lines operations.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element delays or prevents enemy passage of lines. 1. Delays the passage. 2. Prevents the company from moving all personnel through the stationary unit. 3. Engages the main body of either the moving or the stationary unit.

**TASK:** Disrupt Assembly Area (AA) Activities (5-OPFOR-0013)

**CONDITION:** Intelligence reports indicate that platoon- and company-size enemy units are operating in the opposing forces (OPFOR) area of operations. Enemy units can defend from AAs with direct fire, antiarmor weapons, and indirect fire. The enemy has close air support (CAS) and nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) capabilities.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element locates and disrupts enemy AA activities. 1. Locates the element AA. 2. Probes the AA with squad- or team-size elements. 3. Inflicts more than 5 percent casualties on the element. 4. Disrupts element preparations (prevents or delays beyond the allotted time of the element).

**TASK:** Disrupt Movement (5-OPFOR-0014)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is expected to move through the opposing forces (OPFOR) element area of operations. The OPFOR element has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to disrupt enemy movement. The enemy has the capability to defend with direct fire and antiarmor weapons.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element delays enemy movement. 1. Delays the element. 2. Forces the element to deviate from its route. 3. Prevents the element from reaching its destination. 4. Surprises the main body of the element.

**TASK:** Disrupt Enemy Movement and Operations Using Persistent and Nonpersistent Chemical Weapons (5-OPFOR-0015)



**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. Priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements have been obtained by OPFOR patrols. The OPFOR units deliver chemical agents by means of conventional artillery weapons or aircraft, along selected supply routes and key bases in the rear area.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element disrupts enemy movement and operations using persistent and nonpersistent chemical weapons. 1. Delivers chemical agents in low and densely wooded areas. 2. Delays the movement of enemy supplies and equipment to the forward areas. 3. Restricts the movement of the enemy units in the rear area. 4. Channels the movement of enemy units into predesignated ambush areas. 5. Contaminates enemy supplies and equipment. 6. Inflicts a high rate of casualties on enemy forces.

**TASK:** Disrupt Enemy Movement and Operations Using Tactical Nuclear Weapons (5-OPFOR-0016)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. Priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements have been obtained by OPFOR patrols. Tactical nuclear weapons are employed against key locations in the rear area.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element disrupts enemy movement and operations. 1. Disrupts or delays the movement of enemy equipment and supplies to the forward areas. 2. Destroys enemy equipment and supplies. 3. Inflicts a high rate of nuclear casualties among the enemy forces. 4. Denies the enemy the use of specified areas. 5. Contaminates enemy equipment and supplies.

**TASK:** Disrupt Quarters Party Operations (5-OPFOR-0017)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting quarters party operations. It has established an assembly area (AA) but has not moved in the main body.

**STANDARD:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element attempts to disrupt quarters party operations and infiltrates the enemy AA. 1. Locates the quarters party and the AA. 2. Surprises the main body. 3. Penetrates the AA with squad-size probes. 4. Inflicts personnel casualties and vehicle damage. 5. Disrupts unit preparations (prevents or delays beyond unit allotted time).

**TASK:** Disrupt Defensive Preparations (5-OPFOR-0018)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. Priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence requirements obtained by OPFOR patrols indicate that the enemy elements are establishing defensive positions. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element disrupts and delays enemy defensive preparations. 1. Locates and penetrates the enemy security system. 2. Forces the enemy to delay defensive preparations. 3. Disrupts enemy obstacle preparations.

**TASK:** Disrupt a Net Control Station (NCS) (5-OPFOR-0019)

**CONDITION:** The enemy has established a NCS. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has radio and jamming equipment.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element attempts to disrupt an NCS. 1. Attempts to locate the radio frequency that the unit is operating on. 2. Attempts to enter the radio net. 3. Attempts to issue bogus orders to a unit on the net. 4. Jams the radio frequency and forces the unit to go to an alternate frequency.

**TASK:** Disrupt Construction of Vehicle Fighting Positions (5-OPFOR-0020)

**CONDITION:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has located the enemy. The priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and other intelligence obtained by OPFOR patrols indicate that the enemy is constructing vehicle fighting positions within its defensive area. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element attempts to disrupt enemy efforts to establish vehicle fighting positions. 1. Locates the defensive area. 2. Surprises the main body. 3. Penetrates the defensive area with squad-size probes. 4. Inflicts casualties on the unit. 5. Destroys vehicles. 6. Disrupts unit preparations (prevents or delays beyond the allotted time of the unit).

**TASK:** Disrupt a Route Reconnaissance (5-OPFOR-0021)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting a route reconnaissance. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy route.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element attempts to disrupt a squad or section conducting a route reconnaissance. 1. Prevents the unit from meeting its specified time schedule. 2. Forces the unit to deviate from its specified route. 3. Prevents the unit from reaching its assigned destination. 4. Surprises the squad or section. 5. Inflicts casualties on the unit.

**TASK:** Disrupt an Engineer Reconnaissance (5-OPFOR-0022)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting an engineer reconnaissance. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element is positioned along the enemy route.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element disrupts an engineer reconnaissance. 1. Prevents the unit from meeting its specified time schedule. 2. Forces the unit to deviate from its specified route. 3. Prevents the unit from accomplishing its assigned engineer reconnaissance. 4. Surprises the unit conducting the reconnaissance.

**TASK:** Defend a Minefield (5-OPFOR-0023)

**CONDITION:** The enemy is conducting a minefield sweeping operation. The opposing forces (OPFOR) element has a minefield placed in the enemy path. The minefield is under constant observation and fire.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR element defends a minefield against an enemy element conducting a minefield sweeping operation. 1. Prevents the unit from detecting the obstacle. 2. Disrupts the minefield sweeping operation. 3. Prevents the unit from conducting the minefield sweeping operation, prevents the unit from moving all personnel through the breach or delays the completion of the minefield sweeping operation for more than 45 minutes.

**TASK:** Surrender to the Capturing Unit on the Battlefield (5-OPFOR-0024)

**CONDITION:** The enemy has captured opposing forces (OPFOR) element Soldiers, documents, and equipment sensitive to the OPFOR tactical operations.

**STANDARD:** The OPFOR Soldiers retain or destroy documents and equipment. The OPFOR element surrenders documents and equipment of no tactical use to the enemy and attempts to conceal or destroy items of tactical value. The OPFOR element attempts escape and evasion. 1. Prevents the successful capture of documents and equipment. 2. Destroys documents and equipment. 3. Removes identifying markings from equipment. 4. Removes unit-identifying insignia. 5. Provides misleading information. 6. Plans an escape. 7. Delays movement to the nearest collection point. 8. Prevents safeguarding of enemy prisoners of war (EPWs) in order to cause embarrassment to the United States (U.S.).

**TASK:** GATHER INTELLIGENCE (63-OPFOR-1008)

**CONDITION:** Small OPFOR elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete plans.

**STANDARD:** 1. Identify all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 2. Pass through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning devices undetected. 3. Move to an OP that offers cover and concealment and is close enough to gather PIR and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gather all PIR and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraw from area undetected. 6. Report all information to OPFOR HQ.

- ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Three Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Nine Engineer Squads  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Obstacle Section  
 Equipment Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Equipment Platoon  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section  
 Three Assault and Obstacle Sections  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters

**TASK:** Construct an Expedient Landing Zone (LZ) for Helicopters (05-3-1010)  
 (FM 5-430-00-1) (FM 3-21.38) (FM 5-34)  
 (FM 5-430-00-2)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element receives an operation order (OPORD) to construct an expedient LZ for helicopters. The general location of the site is given. The LZ will be used by single UH-60 helicopters for a short duration. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element constructs an expedient LZ capable of supporting UH-60 and UH-1B helicopter operations within 3 hours. Digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader conducts troop-leading procedures and coordinates with the company for additional tools and supplies.</p> <p>* 2. The element leader or sergeant selects the site.  <b>NOTE: The approach or departure zone requires a surface ratio of 10:1.</b>                      a. Conducted a map reconnaissance identifying the possible sites and ensured that the site—                          (1) Met the tactical requirements.                          (2) Had slopes of less than 3 percent.                      b. Conducted a ground reconnaissance of possible sites and ensured that the site selected had—                          (1) A minimum number of trees.  <b>NOTE: The UH-60 or the UH-1B requires a 30.5- by 30.5-meter clear area.</b>                          (2) No approach or departure obstructions.                          (3) Ground access.</p> <p>* 3. The element leader or sergeant directs the site layout.                      a. Defined the boundaries of the LZ.                      b. Designated the approach and departure zone.                      c. Set up material storage areas containing vehicle turnarounds and camouflaged the areas according to the tactical situation.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
4. The element clears the LZ and the glide path. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Cleared obstructions from the glide path.</li> <li>b. Removed trees.</li> <li>c. Cleared brush from the LZ.</li> <li>d. Marked the LZ.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Marked the four corners with regulation panels that were 50 centimeters by 65 centimeters.</li> <li>(2) Marked obstructions (such as wires and tree stumps) near the LZ.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> * 5. The element leader or sergeant reports the mission progress and completion to higher headquarters (HQ). <p><b>NOTE: Digital units send reports and populate the Army Battle Command System (ABCS) with the location of the LZ according to the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).</b></p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
052-193-1310	Construct Demolition Firing Systems
052-193-1311	Prime Military Explosives
052-193-1312	Construct Demolition Initiating System
052-193-3022	Calculate Timber-Cutting Charges
052-243-1506	Classify a Soil Using the Unified Soil Classification System
052-256-3043	Direct Crawler Tractor Operations
052-256-3047	Direct Scoop Loader Operations
052-256-3048	Direct Utility Tractor Operations
071-334-4002	Establish a Helicopter Landing Point

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-0017	Integrate Augmentation Support
05-1-6001	Request a Standard Geospatial Product
05-1-6002	Request Nonstandard Geospatial Products
05-2-0018	Conduct Report Procedures
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Three Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Nine Engineer Squads  
 Company Headquarters Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Equipment Sections  
 Maintenance Section  
 Brigade Engineer Section  
 Obstacle Section  
 Equipment Section  
 Unit Maintenance Section  
 Equipment Platoon  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Three Assault and Obstacle Sections  
 Regimental Engineer Section  
 Combat Medic Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads

**TASK:** Transport Casualties (for Units Without Medical Treatment Personnel) (08-2-C316.05-T01A)  
 (FM 8-10-6) (AR 200-1) (AR 385-10)  
 (DA FORM 1155) (DA FORM 1156) (FM 12-6)  
 (FM 3-21.38)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Unit personnel are wounded and some may be chemically contaminated. The unit has no organic medical-treatment personnel. Threat force contact has been broken. Unit defenses have been reorganized. Casualties are transported from defensive positions to designated casualty collection points. All methods of transport are employed. Some wounded enemy prisoner of war (EPW) casualties may require transport. This task is performed simultaneously with other reorganization tasks. The tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) and higher headquarters (HQ) operation order (OPORD) are available. Simplified collective-protection equipment (SCPE) is on hand and/or field-expedient and natural shelters are available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Casualties are transported as soon as the tactical situation permits according to the TACSOP, the OPORD, the provisions of the Geneva Convention, and Field Manual (FM) 8-10-6. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The commander and leaders supervise the transport of casualties. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Monitored casualty transport operations for compliance with FM 8-10-6 and the TACSOP.</li> <li>b. Identified casualty collection points.</li> <li>c. Identified transport requirements.</li> <li>d. Supervised the preparation of casualties for transport.</li> <li>e. Coordinated the transport of casualties from the unit area with the higher HQ personnel element according to FM 8-10-6 and the TACSOP.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>f. Coordinated security requirements for the pickup site with subelements and the higher HQ operations element.</p> <p>g. Disseminated transport information to unit personnel.</p> <p>h. Forwarded Department of the Army (DA) Forms 1155 (Witness Statement on Individual) and 1156 (Casualty Feeder Report) to the higher HQ personnel element according to FM 12-6 and the TACSOP.</p> <p>2. Element personnel prepare casualties for transport.</p> <p>a. Provided first aid treatment to casualties.</p> <p>b. Reported casualties.</p> <p>c. Collected classified documents, such as signal operation instructions (SOI), standing signal instructions (SSI), maps, overlays, and key lists.</p> <p>d. Secured the custody of organizational equipment according to the TACSOP.</p> <p>e. Forwarded casualty feeder reports to unit HQ according to the TACSOP.</p> <p>3. Element personnel transport casualties to casualty collection points using manual carries.</p> <p>a. Selected the type of manual carry appropriate to the situation and the injury.</p> <p>b. Transported the casualty without causing further injury according to FM 8-10-6.</p> <p>4. Unit personnel transport casualties to casualty collection points using litter carries.</p> <p>a. Identified the litter teams.</p> <p>b. Constructed an improvised litter from available material, as required.</p> <p>c. Secured the casualty on the litter.</p> <p>d. Transported the casualty without causing further injury according to FM 8-10-6.</p> <p>5. Element personnel transport casualties to a medical-treatment facility (MTF) using available vehicles.</p> <p>a. Loaded the maximum number of casualties according to FM 8-10-6.</p> <p>b. Secured casualties in the vehicle.</p> <p>c. Transported casualties without causing further injury according to FM 8-10-6.</p> <p>* 6. The commander and leaders request an aeromedical evacuation.</p> <p>a. Transmitted the request according to FM 8-10-6, the OPORD, and the TACSOP.</p> <p>b. Selected the landing site (which provides sufficient space for helicopter hover, landing, and take-off) according to FMs 8-10-6 and 3-21.38.</p> <p>c. Supervised the removal of all dangerous objects likely to be blown about before aircraft arrival.</p> <p>d. Supervised the security of the landing site according to the TACSOP.</p> <p>e. Ensured that the landing zone (LZ) was appropriately marked (such as, light sets and smoke) according to the TACSOP, if required.</p> <p>7. Element personnel assist in loading the ambulance.</p> <p>a. Employed the proper carrying and loading techniques according to FM 8-10-6.</p> <p>b. Loaded casualties in the sequence directed by the crew.</p> <p>c. Loaded casualties without causing unnecessary discomfort.</p> <p>d. Employed safety procedures according to Army Regulation (AR) 385-10, FM 8-10-6, and the TACSOP.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
e. Employed environmental protection procedures according to AR 200-1 and the TACSOP.  8. Element personnel transport chemically contaminated casualties. a. Assumed MOPP4. b. Marked contaminated casualties according to the TACSOP. c. Notified the supporting MTF that contaminated casualties were en route to their location. d. Transported casualties directly to a designated decontamination and treatment station. e. Protected casualties from further contamination during transport.  9. Unit personnel transport EPW casualties. a. Maintained security of EPW casualties according to the TACSOP. b. Searched EPW casualties for weapons and ordnance before transport. c. Transported EPW casualties according to the provisions of the Geneva Convention and the TACSOP.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
08-2-0314.05-T01A	Treat Unit Casualties (for Units With Medical Treatment Personnel)
12-1-0403.05-T01A	Report Casualties

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



- ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Three Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Nine Engineer Squads  
 Company Headquarters Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Equipment Sections  
 Maintenance Section  
 Brigade Engineer Section  
 Obstacle Section  
 Equipment Section  
 Unit Maintenance Section  
 Equipment Platoon  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Three Assault and Obstacle Sections  
 Regimental Engineer Section  
 Combat Medic Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads

**TASK:** Conduct Battlefield Stress Reduction and Stress Prevention Procedures (08-2-R303.05-T01A)  
 (FM 8-51) (FM 22-51)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Combat health support (CHS) operations have commenced. Element personnel are deployed in support of higher headquarters (HQ) operations. Leaders implement the sleep plan according to the tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) to manage battle fatigue (BF). Personnel have been cross-trained on critical tasks. Operations are continuous over a prolonged period, causing stressful situations for personnel. The commander has directed that procedures for managing battlefield stress be implemented. Simplified collective-protection equipment (SCPE) is on hand or field-expedient and natural shelters are available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element applies techniques that counter battlefield stress. At mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4, performance degradation factors increase the need for stress prevention implementation. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in MOPP4.

**NOTE:** Due to the technical knowledge and skills required to perform some military occupational specialty (MOS) specific tasks, caution must be exercised when cross-training personnel. For instance, nonmedical personnel cannot be cross-trained to perform MOS specific medical tasks.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The commander and leaders perform stress prevention actions. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Issued warning orders, operation orders (OPORDs), and fragmentary orders (FRAGOs) to the lowest possible level.</li> <li>b. Provided Soldiers with an accurate assessment of the friendly and enemy situation.</li> <li>c. Briefed the leaders' intention to all unit personnel.</li> <li>d. Spoke positively concerning the unit missions, purpose, and abilities.</li> <li>e. Encouraged a positive attitude throughout the unit.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>f. Instituted an information dissemination plan designed to quell and prevent rumors.</li> <li>g. Informed personnel of the availability of religious support.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. The commander and leaders implement the sleep plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided a safe and secure area away from vehicles and other high-noise activities.</li> <li>b. Adjusted the sleep plan as dictated by the tactical situation.</li> <li>c. Enforced the sleep plan according to the TACSOP.</li> </ul> <p>* 3. Leaders implement task rotation or restructuring procedures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Alternated cross-trained unit personnel on critical tasks, as required.</li> <li>b. Rotated unit personnel between demanding and nondemanding tasks.</li> <li>c. Assigned two Soldiers to function independently on tasks requiring a high degree of accuracy.</li> <li>d. Adjusted task rotation policies and procedures to the tactical situation.</li> </ul> <p>* 4. Leaders implement stress coping and management techniques.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Integrated new unit members into the unit immediately.</li> <li>b. Assisted Soldiers in resolving home front problems.</li> <li>c. Implemented a buddy system to observe signs of stress or BF among Soldiers and leaders.</li> <li>d. Provided instruction on relaxation techniques to all personnel before deployment.</li> <li>e. Conducted after-action debriefings.</li> <li>f. Scheduled a critical-event debriefing after any traumatic event according to Field Manual (FM) 22-51.</li> <li>g. Conducted unit award, decoration, recognition, and memorial ceremonies.</li> </ul> <p>* 5. The commander and leaders implement stress control techniques.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Implemented a plan to deal with mild, seriously stressed, or BF cases.</li> <li>b. Assigned Soldiers showing signs of severe stress or BF to simple tasks.</li> <li>c. Directed personnel to be supportive of stressed or BF Soldiers.</li> <li>d. Referred Soldiers showing signs of serious stress or BF to the supporting medical-treatment facility (MTF) for evaluation.</li> <li>e. Reintegrated return-to-duty Soldiers into their specific element.</li> </ul> <p>6. Element personnel employ stress prevention measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained a positive attitude concerning the unit mission, purpose, and abilities.</li> <li>b. Complied with the commander's sleep plan.</li> <li>c. Identified other Soldiers with signs of stress or BF.</li> <li>d. Provided immediate buddy aid support.</li> <li>e. Reported signs of stress or BF in other Soldiers to their immediate supervisor.</li> <li>f. Accepted new unit members immediately.</li> <li>g. Practiced relaxation techniques at appropriate times and places.</li> <li>h. Participated in buddy systems and after-action debriefings.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Three Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Company Headquarters Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Equipment Section

**TASK:** Perform Field Sanitation Functions (08-2-R315.05-T01A)  
 (FM 21-10) (AR 200-1) (AR 385-10)  
 (AR 40-5) (FM 4-25.12)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Health hazards exist that require field sanitation measures. The element is in the field without permanent sanitation or water facilities. The commander has selected and trained the unit field sanitation team (FST). The combat health support (CHS) plan, the tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP), and the higher headquarters (HQ) operation order (OPORD) are available. All required sanitation equipment is available. Field sanitation measures are continuous and are performed simultaneously with other operational tasks. Simplified collective-protection equipment (SCPE) is on hand and field-expedient and natural shelters are available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The FST performs field sanitation measures according to the TACSOP, Field Manuals (FMs) 21-10 and 4-25.12, and the commander's guidance. At mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4, only minimum-essential field sanitation activities are performed. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in MOPP4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The commander directs field sanitation measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Directed field sanitation activities to counter a medical threat.</li> <li>b. Monitored field sanitation activities for compliance with FMs 21-10 and 4-25.12 and the TACSOP.</li> <li>c. Enforced individual field sanitation measures.</li> <li>d. Requested assistance from the supporting preventive medicine (PVNTMED) element for sanitation problems that were beyond the expertise of the unit FST according to the TACSOP and the OPORD.</li> <li>e. Corrected field sanitation deficiencies.</li> <li>f. Reported field sanitation deficiencies that could not be corrected by unit personnel to the FST.</li> <li>g. Enforced safety procedures according to Army Regulation (AR) 385-10 and the TACSOP.</li> <li>h. Enforced environmental-protection procedures according to AR 200-1 and the TACSOP.</li> </ul> <p>2. The FST supervises the unit field sanitation measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained the field sanitation basic load according to AR 40-5 and FM 4-25.12.</li> <li>b. Supervised the distribution of field sanitation basic-load items according to AR 40-5 and FM 4-25.12.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Tested the unit water supply for the required chlorine residual level according to FM 4-25.12 and the TACSOP.</p> <p>d. Inspected water containers and trailers according to FM 4-25.12 and the TACSOP.</p> <p>e. Monitored personnel to ensure that they used personal protective measures (skin, clothing, and bed net repellent) against arthropods and rodents according to applicable directives and the commander's guidance.</p> <p>f. Conducted rodent surveys, as required.</p> <p>g. Monitored personnel for the employment of correct hygiene measures.</p> <p>h. Monitored waste facilities and procedures for compliance with AR 40-5, FM 4-25.12, and the TACSOP, as required.</p> <p>i. Inspected latrines and urinals according to FM 4-25.12 and the TACSOP.</p> <p>j. Inspected liquid and solid waste-disposal facilities for compliance with AR 40-5, FM 4-25.12, and the TACSOP.</p> <p>k. Inspected hand-washing devices according to FM 4-25.12 and the TACSOP.</p> <p>l. Inspected the transport, storage, preparation, and service of food for compliance with FM 4-25.12 and the TACSOP.</p> <p>m. Provided advice, recommendations, and training requirements to the commander.</p> <p>n. Enforced safety procedures according to AR 385-10 and the TACSOP.</p> <p>o. Enforced environmental-protection procedures according to AR 200-1 and the TACSOP.</p> <p>3. Unit personnel employ field sanitation measures.</p> <p>a. Maintained the prescribed load of water purification materials according to AR 40-5, FM 21-10, and the TACSOP.</p> <p>b. Prepared nonpotable water for personal use according to FM 21-10 and the TACSOP.</p> <p>c. Consumed only water designated as potable.</p> <p>d. Maintained latrines and hand-washing facilities according to FM 21-10 and the TACSOP.</p> <p>e. Employed preventive measures against cold and heat injuries.</p> <p>f. Employed personal-hygiene measures.</p> <p>g. Employed preventive measures against arthropod and rodent infestation, to include using skin, clothing, and bed net repellent.</p> <p>h. Reported field sanitation deficiencies to the FST.</p> <p>i. Employed safety procedures according to AR 385-10 and the TACSOP.</p> <p>j. Employed environmental-protection procedures according to AR 200-1 and the TACSOP.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

ARTEP 5-027-35-MTP

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Company Headquarters Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Equipment Section

**TASK:** Perform Unit Graves Registration (GRREG) Operations (10-2-0318.05-T01A)  
 (FM 10-64) (FM 3-11.4) (FM 3-5)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element has sustained fatalities. The tactical situation permits GRREG operations to be performed. Some remains may be contaminated. The tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) is available. There are no GRREG personnel available; nonmortuary affairs personnel perform the task. The theater commander has authorized emergency burials. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element recovers the killed in action (KIA) and evacuates them to a designated mortuary-affairs collection point or performs an emergency burial. Personal possessions are not lost. Locations of the emergency graves are recorded and reported to higher headquarters (HQ). These activities are curtailed in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in MOPP4.

**NOTE:** Only those tasks deemed mission-essential by the commander are performed in MOPP4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The element commander designates a search-and-recovery team.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selected a team leader.</li> <li>b. Issued guidance.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The search-and-recovery team leader prepares for the search.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed a map or aerial reconnaissance of the search area.</li> <li>b. Identified additional support requirements.</li> <li>c. Requested additional support requirements from higher HQ.</li> <li>d. Identified the search pattern to be used.</li> <li>e. Coordinated nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) and explosive ordnance disposal (EOD) assistance with higher HQ.</li> <li>f. Coordinated area security with higher HQ.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. The search-and-recovery team leader supervises the search-and-recovery and the evacuation operations.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Briefed the search-and-recovery team on operational procedures.</li> <li>b. Issued personal effects bags, human remains pouches (if available), and NBC agent tags.</li> <li>c. Assigned the search area.</li> <li>d. Monitored the search-and-recovery team operations for compliance with the TACSOP and the commander's guidance.</li> <li>e. Coordinated evacuation operations with higher HQ.</li> <li>f. Forwarded the situation report (SITREP) to higher HQ according to the TACSOP.</li> </ul> </li> <li>4. The search-and-recovery team conducts the search.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Checked the area for mines and booby traps immediately.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>b. Searched the assigned areas for remains and personal effects.                      c. Marked the terrain location of the remains with pegs.                      d. Collected all disassociated personal effects.                      e. Recorded the 8-digit grid coordinates of the recovery site.</p> <p>5. The search-and-recovery team recovers remains.                      a. Established tentative identification.                      b. Attached the NBC tag or a tag marked with a large C to the contaminated and contagious remains.                      c. Attached personal effects to the remains.                      d. Shrouded the remains with available materials.                      e. Prepared a sketch of the recovery site.                      f. Prepared a map overlay of the recovery site.</p> <p>6. The search-and-recovery team evacuates remains.                      a. Verified that personal effects were attached to the remains.                      b. Loaded the remains in ground transportation, feet first and in aircraft, headfirst.                      c. Transported the remains in a covered vehicle or aircraft to a designated mortuary-affair collection point.</p> <p>* 7. The search-and-recovery team leader supervises emergency burials.                      a. Identified the specific burial site.                      b. Supervised the marking of the grave site.                      c. Supervised the burying of all recovered remains and their personal effects.</p> <p>8. The search-and-recovery team performs emergency burials.                      a. Prepared the grave site.                      b. Placed the remains in the grave.                      c. Marked all grave sites.                      d. Buried the U.S., allied, and enemy forces remains with their personal effects in separate grave sites.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



**ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Company Headquarters Section

**TASK:** Receive Airdrop Resupply (10-2-0319.05-T01A)  
 (FM 10-27-1) (FM 10-27-2) (FM 4-20.41)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Since the normal supply support transportation is unavailable, supplies and equipment are requested by airdrop. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company derigs and recovers supplies, equipment, and rigging gear. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

**NOTE:** An airdrop of supplies and equipment may be preplanned or immediate.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The element requests supplies and equipment by airdrop.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified the required supplies and equipment.</li> <li>b. Identified the drop zone (DZ).</li> <li>c. Determined the date and time of the airdrop request.</li> <li>d. Forwarded the request for a preplanned or immediate airdrop to the Supply Officer (U.S. Army) (S4).</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 2. The element commander and leaders develop the airdrop supply and equipment receipt plan.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Designated a recovery officer and a safety officer.</li> <li>b. Verified the delivery time and location with the S4.</li> <li>c. Coordinated the survey of the DZ or area of operations (AO) with the pathfinders, the combat control team (CCT), or the DZ support team (DZST) through the Intelligence Officer (U.S. Army) (S2) or the Operations and Training Officer (U.S. Army) (S3).</li> <li>d. Prepared the recovery and alternate plans.</li> <li>e. Identified the number of people, equipment, and vehicles required for the recovery of supplies and equipment.</li> <li>f. Coordinated the transportation and materials-handling equipment (MHE) support with the S4.</li> <li>g. Briefed personnel on the tactical situation and the recovery and alternative plans.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. The company receives supplies and equipment.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Secured the DZ or AO.</li> <li>b. Derigged supplies and equipment.</li> <li>c. Recorded shortages.</li> <li>d. Identified the damaged items.</li> <li>e. Evacuated supplies and equipment.</li> <li>f. Retrieved the airdrop rigging equipment.</li> <li>g. Buried or destroyed the airdrop rigging equipment that could not be removed.</li> <li>h. Inspected the DZ to make certain that no serviceable airdrop equipment was left behind.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
i. Forwarded the airdrop equipment to the nearest collection point or other location as directed by the S4.		
j. Forwarded the situation report (SITREP) to the S2 or S3 and the S4.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Company Headquarters Section

**TASK:** Provide Company Supply Support (10-2-0320.05-T01A)  
 (DA PAM 710-2-1) (AR 710-2) (FM 3-11.4)  
 (FM 3-5)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element headquarters (HQ) is receiving requests for supplies from subordinate elements. The equipment and supplies are arriving through supply channels, but additional supplies may be required. Extra small arms and ammunition are stored in the supply area. The unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) and the battalion operation order (OPORD) are available. The supply area has been established and supply support is a continuous task that is performed simultaneously with other support and operational tasks. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The equipment and supplies are distributed without interfering with mission requirements as established by the TACSOP and the OPORD. At mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4, unit supply support is reduced to the minimum-essential actions. Digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means according to unit TACSOP. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in MOPP4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The element commander directs unit supply operations.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Inspected the supply records and status to ensure compliance with supply regulations, directives, and the TACSOP.</li> <li>b. Directed inventories of supplies and equipment to calculate assets on hand.</li> <li>c. Inspected unit equipment, weapons, and ammunition storage areas for compliance with supply regulations, directives, and the TACSOP.</li> <li>d. Directed the issue of supplies and equipment according to battalion guidance and the TACSOP or both sustainment controls.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The supply sergeant supervises unit supply operations.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Inspected the supply status to determine total assets.</li> <li>b. Conducted inventories to calculate assets on hand.</li> <li>c. Developed the supply storage plans.</li> <li>d. Monitored supply transactions to ensure compliance with established supply procedures.</li> <li>e. Supervised the control of weapons and ammunition.</li> <li>f. Prepared input to the materiel condition status reports (MCSR).</li> </ul> </li> <li>3. Supply personnel request additional supplies.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated requirements with the elements.</li> <li>b. Calculated resupply requirements.</li> <li>c. Recorded requests on the appropriate document register.</li> <li>d. Forwarded resupply requests to the Supply Officer (U.S. Army) (S4).</li> </ul> </li> <li>4. Supply personnel receive supplies.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Inspected incoming supplies for quantity and condition.</li> <li>b. Recorded receipt of supplies on the appropriate document register.</li> <li>c. Stored supplies according to storage plans.</li> <li>d. Notified the requesting element of the availability of supplies for issue.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
5. Supply personnel issue supplies. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Processed supply requests according to the appropriate regulations, directives, and the TACSOP.</li> <li>b. Prepared transaction documents according to the appropriate regulations, directives, and the TACSOP.</li> <li>c. Issued supplies as prescribed in the commander's guidance.</li> <li>d. Maintained the prescribed copies of the transactions according to the appropriate regulations and directives.</li> </ul> 6. Supply personnel maintain small arms and ammunition. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Controlled stored weapons and ammunition according to the appropriate regulations and command policies.</li> <li>b. Requested ammunition resupply from the S4.</li> <li>c. Performed unit-level maintenance on small arms.</li> <li>d. Forwarded weapons beyond organizational-repair capabilities to the support maintenance elements.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Equipment Section

**TASK:** Operate a Telephone Switch (Manual/SB22/PT) (11-5-0050.05-T01A)  
 (TC 24-20) (TM 11-5805-262-12)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element occupies a defensive position and is directed to establish wire communications. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element installs wire, a switchboard (SB), and telephones to establish and maintain communications with subordinate elements no later than the time specified in the operation order (OPORD). Digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Designated personnel operate a telephone SB.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Inspected the SB22/PT for accountability and serviceability according to the packing list and Technical Manual (TM) 11-5805-262-12. If the packing list was not available, used the end-item list to check the components.</li> <li>b. Positioned the telephone SB on a flat surface, such as a table, a packing box, or a ledge in a foxhole, but not directly on the ground. Used a poncho, a shelter half, or canvas to protect the SB from the elements.</li> <li>c. Laid the SB on its side with nameplate up.</li> <li>d. Grounded the equipment according to the grounding techniques specified in TM 11-5805-262-12.</li> <li>e. Performed the SB preoperation procedures according to TM 11-5805-262-12.</li> <li>f. Labeled the SB according to unit standing operating procedure (SOP).</li> <li>g. Connected local and trunk wire lines.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. Designated personnel install the internal wiring and telephones.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Tested the field wire or cable before installation.</li> <li>b. Laid the field wire and installed telephones according to the priority established by the platoon leader.</li> <li>c. Secured the field wire at starting points and at changes of direction to reduce strain.</li> <li>d. Used the proper hardware (anything that did not cut or damage the wire) and ties (basket hitch, loop knot, clove hitch, or drop loop) for hanging tension bridges and securing points.</li> <li>e. Tagged the wire ties.</li> <li>f. Enhanced concealment using the terrain and vegetation.</li> <li>g. Ensured that the overhead wire construction met clearance requirements of at least 5.5 meters above secondary roads and 7.2 meters above primary roads.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. Designated personnel operate the telephone SB.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Tested the SB22/PT by performing communication checks with all users to ensure that the SB was operational.</li> <li>b. Processed calls.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Performed preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on the telephone SB according to TM 11-5805-262-12.  4. Designated personnel inform the platoon leader when wire communications are established.  5. Designated personnel perform PMCS on the field wire or cable lines. a. Maintained a 20 percent slack in the field wire or cable lines. b. Kept all wire splices and cable locks clear of standing water.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Three Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Nine Engineer Squads  
 Company Headquarters Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Equipment Sections  
 Maintenance Section  
 Brigade Engineer Section  
 Obstacle Section  
 Equipment Section  
 Unit Maintenance Section  
 Equipment Platoon  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Three Assault and Obstacle Sections  
 Regimental Engineer Section  
 Combat Medic Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads

**TASK:** Provide a Field Cable or Wire System (11-5-0121.05-T01A)  
 (FM 24-19) (TC 24-20) (TM 11-5805-262-12)  
 (TM 11-5805-294-12)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit receives a fragmentary order (FRAGO) and a briefing on the size and shape of the facility or supported command post (CP), the location of each element, the required instruments, and the installation priority. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The internal communications network is set up according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP) or the commander's guidance, and is operational by the time specified in the order. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The section leader prepares a telephone cable or wire installation plan. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selected a wire route (based on a map study) that met the requirements of the tactical situation and was easy to construct and maintain.</li> <li>b. Selected the most direct primary and alternate wire routes after conducting a ground reconnaissance.</li> <li>c. Prepared an interim plan indicating the routes of the wire lines.</li> <li>d. Allocated the manpower and materials to accomplish the task.</li> <li>e. Prepared a telephone traffic diagram showing the number of telephone circuits in the communications system.</li> <li>f. Prepared a telephone directory according to the signal operation instructions (SOI) or the standing signal instructions (SSI). Included the names and numbers of the telephone system users.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>2. The section installs a telephone switchboard (SB).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Inspected the equipment for accountability and serviceability according to the packing list and the appropriate technical manual (TM). Used the end-item list if no packing list was available.</li> <li>b. Positioned the telephone SB on a flat surface, such as a table, packing box, or ledge in a foxhole, but not directly on the ground. Used a poncho, shelter half, or canvas to protect the SB from adverse elements.</li> <li>c. Laid the SB on its side with the nameplate up.</li> <li>d. Grounded the equipment using proper grounding techniques according to the appropriate TM.</li> <li>e. Performed SB preoperation procedures according to the appropriate TM.</li> <li>f. Labeled the SB according to the traffic diagram.</li> <li>g. Connected the local and trunk wire lines.</li> </ul> <p>3. The section installs internal wiring and telephones.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Installed the distribution box.</li> <li>b. Tested the field cable or wire before installing.</li> <li>c. Laid the field wire and installed telephones according to the priority established by the communications section leader.</li> <li>d. Secured the field wire at all the starting points and at any changes of direction to reduce the strain.</li> <li>e. Used proper hardware (anything that did not cut or damage the wire) and ties (basket hitch, loop knot, clove hitch, or drop loop) for hanging tension bridges and securing points.</li> <li>f. Tagged the wire ties.</li> <li>g. Used the terrain and vegetation to enhance concealment.</li> <li>h. Ensured that all overhead wire construction met clearance requirements of at least 5.5 meters above secondary roads and 7.2 meters above primary roads.</li> <li>i. Finished the line route map indicating the routes of wire lines, SBs, switching centrals, and test stations; the number of circuits along a route; and the type of wire construction.</li> </ul> <p>4. The section operates the telephone SB.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Tested the SB to ensure that it was operational.</li> <li>b. Used the turning hand-ringing generator on the telephone (TA 312/PT) to terminate and ring off circuits as they became available to called parties.</li> <li>c. Processed calls.</li> <li>d. Updated the traffic diagram, as required.</li> <li>e. Performed operator preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on the SB according to the appropriate TM.</li> </ul> <p>5. The section performs PMCS on the field cable or wire lines.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained a 20 percent slack in the field cable or wire lines.</li> <li>b. Kept all wire splices and cable locks clear of standing water.</li> </ul>		



TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-3-5230	Perform Preventive Maintenance on Building Systems

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Three Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Nine Engineer Squads  
 Company Headquarters Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Equipment Sections  
 Maintenance Section  
 Brigade Engineer Section  
 Obstacle Section  
 Equipment Section  
 Unit Maintenance Section  
 Equipment Platoon  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Three Assault and Obstacle Sections  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads

**TASK:** Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (EPWs) (19-3-3106.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-19.40) (AR 190-8) (DD FORM 2745)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The enemy Soldiers surrendered or were captured. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The capturing element takes charge of and evacuates the EPWs according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP) and the search, silence, segregate, speed, safeguard, and tag (5 Ss and T) method. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The element searches the EPWs.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Removed weapons and documents that had intelligence value.</li> <li>b. Returned the personal items of no military intelligence value, such as protective clothing and equipment.</li> <li>c. Furnished receipts to the prisoners for their personal property that was taken.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. The element segregates the EPWs.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Segregated the EPWs by rank, sex, desertion status, civilian status, nationality, and ideology.</li> <li>b. Turned the wounded EPWs over to the medical personnel for evacuation through the medical channels.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. The element silences the EPWs.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Prevented the EPW leaders from giving orders.</li> <li>b. Prevented the EPWs from planning an escape.</li> <li>c. Did not talk in front of the EPWs except to issue orders and maintain discipline.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>4. The element safeguards the EPWs.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Removed the EPWs from the dangers of the battlefield.</li> <li>b. Did not allow anyone to abuse the EPWs.</li> <li>c. Treated the EPWs humanely.</li> </ul> <p>5. The element tags the EPWs with a Department of Defense (DD) Form 2745 (Enemy Prisoner of War [EPW] Capture Tag).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Annotated the date and time of the capture, the capturing unit, the grid coordinates of the capture, and the circumstances of the capture.</li> <li>b. Attached Part A to the EPWs.</li> <li>c. Retained Part B for the unit records.</li> <li>d. Attached Part C to the property.</li> </ul> <p>6. The element speeds the EPWs to the rear.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Notified higher headquarters (HQ) that the company had EPWs.</li> <li>b. Removed the EPWs rearward to the nearest military police (MP) collecting point.</li> <li>c. Exploited the intelligence information.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-2-0018	Conduct Report Procedures

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Three Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Nine Engineer Squads  
 Company Headquarters Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Equipment Sections  
 Maintenance Section  
 Brigade Engineer Section  
 Obstacle Section  
 Equipment Section  
 Unit Maintenance Section  
 Equipment Platoon  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Three Assault and Obstacle Sections  
 Regimental Engineer Section  
 Combat Medic Section

**TASK:** Conduct Unit Level Maintenance Operations (43-2-0001.05-T01A)  
 (FM 4-30.3) (AR 220-1) (AR 385-40)  
 (AR 700-138) (AR 750-1) (DA PAM 738-750)  
 (FM 9-43-2)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element maintenance personnel receive requests to repair inoperative organic equipment. The element maintenance area is established. The required tools, equipment, and personnel are available. Operators are performing preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on the equipment. Recovery operations with injured operators on board may be required. The element tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) is available. Element maintenance is a continuous task and is performed simultaneously with other internal support and operational tasks. Digital elements have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element vehicles and equipment are maintained according to the appropriate technical manuals (TMs) and the commander's guidance. Digital elements send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The element commander directs the element maintenance program. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Supervised the implementation of the unit maintenance program to ensure that the commander's guidance and the TACSOP were followed.</li> <li>b. Identified the company operational levels by reviewing the vehicle and equipment status reports.</li> <li>c. Approved the use of controlled exchanges when the required repair parts were not available.</li> <li>d. Approved repairs using the battle damage assessment and repair (BDAR) procedures when the established repair procedures could not be used.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>e. Checked the materiel condition status report (MCSR) for accuracy and completeness.</li> <li>f. Identified current or anticipated maintenance problems to minimize their impact on element readiness.</li> <li>g. Coordinated the resolution of maintenance problems with the battalion maintenance officer (BMO).</li> <li>h. Forwarded the MCSR to the BMO.</li> <li>i. Conducted periodic inspections of personnel and equipment to ensure that the safety program was enforced.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. Section leaders supervise operator maintenance.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Monitored PMCS performance for compliance with the appropriate TMs and the commander's guidance.</li> <li>b. Inspected personnel and equipment to for compliance with the safety program.</li> <li>c. Coordinated maintenance assistance with the motor sergeant.</li> <li>d. Monitored the supply of the repair parts for platoon equipment to ensure that the repair parts were on order.</li> <li>e. Requested approval for the BDAR through the motor sergeant.</li> <li>f. Maintained the maintenance status of vehicles, weapons, and equipment.</li> <li>g. Provided input for the MCSR to the commander.</li> </ul> <p>3. Company personnel perform operator maintenance.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed PMCS according to the appropriate TMs.</li> <li>b. Notified the supervisor of any maintenance problems beyond the operator's capability.</li> <li>c. Requested approval for the BDAR through the platoon leader when the established repair procedures could not be used.</li> <li>d. Performed the BDAR according to the appropriate BDAR manual.</li> <li>e. Assisted the unit maintenance personnel with the repairs and services.</li> </ul> <p>* 4. The motor sergeant supervises the unit maintenance personnel.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Organized the element maintenance personnel to perform element maintenance activities.</li> <li>b. Supervised The Army Maintenance Management System (TAMMS) and the prescribed load list (PLL) procedures for completeness and accuracy.</li> <li>c. Supervised the repair and the inspection procedures to ensure that they were done safely and according to the appropriate references.</li> <li>d. Requested approval for the BDAR from the commander when the established repair procedures could not be used.</li> <li>e. Supervised the BDAR procedures to ensure that they were done according to the appropriate BDAR manuals.</li> <li>f. Requested approval for controlled exchanges from the commander when the required repair parts were not available.</li> <li>g. Supervised the use of controlled exchanges for compliance with the commander's guidance.</li> <li>h. Notified the platoon or section leaders upon completion of the repairs.</li> <li>i. Supervised the recovery operations to ensure that the correct recovery and safety procedures were used.</li> <li>j. Supervised the Army Oil Analysis Program (AOAP) procedures to ensure that the testing of oil samples was done at the required intervals.</li> <li>k. Coordinated the maintenance status with the platoon leader.</li> <li>l. Provided the unit maintenance status to the commander.</li> </ul>		

5. Unit maintenance personnel repair organic equipment.
  - a. Diagnosed faults on the inoperative equipment.
  - b. Requested the required repair parts from the PLL clerk.
  - c. Repaired the equipment according to applicable TMs.
  - d. Requested approval for the BDAR through the motor sergeant when the established repair parts were not available.
  - e. Performed the BDAR according to the appropriate BDAR manual.
  - f. Requested approval for controlled exchanges through the motor sergeant when the required repair parts were not available.
  - g. Performed controlled exchanges.
  - h. Performed a final inspection to ensure that repairs met quality control standards.
  - i. Employed safety procedures to minimize accidents.
6. Unit maintenance personnel conduct transactions with support maintenance.
  - a. Identified the category of the repair as direct support or higher.
  - b. Corrected unit level deficiencies.
  - c. Prepared the required documentation for submission to support maintenance.
  - d. Evacuated the equipment to support maintenance.
  - e. Verified the completion of repairs.
  - f. Picked up the equipment upon the completion of repairs.
7. Unit maintenance personnel perform administrative-support functions.
  - a. Maintained the PLL.
  - b. Requested repair parts for element equipment.
  - c. Turned in unserviceable, repairable items.
  - d. Maintained technical publications on all organic equipment.
8. Unit maintenance personnel recover disabled vehicles.
  - a. Verified the location of the disabled vehicle.
  - b. Identified the best route to the vehicle, given the tactical situation.
  - c. Coordinated indirect-fire support along the route with the Intelligence Officer (U.S. Army) (S2) and the Operations and Training Officer (U.S. Army) (S3).
  - d. Maintained security while en route to the recovery site.
  - e. Established local security at the recovery site.
  - f. Removed casualties from vehicles.
  - g. Treated casualties.
  - h. Requested medical assistance, if required.
  - i. Evacuated casualties, if required.
  - j. Performed a battle damage assessment to determine if repairs were required.
  - k. Performed repairs and the BDAR on site, if possible.
    - l. Recovered nonrepairable equipment back to the unit maintenance area according to the established recovery procedures.
  - m. Requested the disposition of unrecoverable equipment from the commander.
  - n. Conducted salvage operations to remove all usable equipment.
  - o. Prepared vehicles for destruction according to the TACSOP.

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

### **SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
052-192-1231	Perform Preventive-Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS) on the Mine Clearing Line Charge (MICLIC)
052-198-3105	Supervise Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS) of Bridging Equipment
052-201-1180	Perform Operator Preventive-Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS)
052-226-1012	Perform Preventive-Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS) on the Bridge of the Armored-Vehicle-Launched Bridge (AVLB)
052-226-1101	Perform Preventive-Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS) on the Launcher of an Armored-Vehicle-Launched Bridge (AVLB)
052-227-1005	Perform Operator Preventive-Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS) on an Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE), M9
052-251-1150	Perform Operator's Preventive-Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS) on a Product Conveyor
052-251-1155	Perform Operator's Preventive-Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS) on Crawler Mounted Rock Drill
052-251-1167	Perform Operator's Preventive-Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS) on a 125-Kilowatt (kW) Generator
052-251-1173	Perform Operator's Preventive-Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS) on a 150-Tons-Per-Hour (TPH) Primary Crushing Unit
052-251-1175	Perform Operator's Preventive-Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS) on a 150-Tons-Per-Hour (TPH) Secondary Crushing Unit
052-251-1181	Perform Operator's Preventive-Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS) on a 2,000-Gallons-Per-Minute (GPM) Water Pump Unit
052-251-1183	Perform Operator's Preventive-Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS) on a Tertiary Crushing Unit
052-251-1184	Perform Operator's Preventive-Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS) on a Washing and Screening Unit
052-251-1187	Perform Operator's Preventive-Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS) on a Surge Bin
052-251-2031	Supervise the Performance of Operator's Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS) on Quarrying and Rock-Processing Equipment
052-251-2042	Supervise Operator's Preventive-Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS) on a Rock Drill
052-252-1037	Perform Preventive-Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS) on an M5 Concrete Mobile Mixer
052-252-1040	Perform Preventive-Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS) on an M4 Bituminous Distributor Module
052-252-1046	Perform Preventive-Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS) on an M087 Hot-Oil Heater
052-252-1069	Perform Preventive-Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS) on an M780T Asphalt Paver

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
052-252-1071	Perform Operator's Preventive-Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS) on an M081 Asphalt Mixing Plant
052-252-1073	Perform Operator's Preventive-Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS) on an M1075 Palletized Load System (PLS)
052-252-2005	Supervise Preventive-Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS) on an M780T Asphalt Paver
052-252-2007	Supervise Operator's Preventive-Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS) on a M081 Asphalt Mixing Plant
052-252-2009	Supervise Operator's Preventive-Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS) on Surface Treatment Equipment
052-252-2010	Supervise Operator's Preventive-Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS) on Hot-Mix Equipment
052-252-2011	Supervise Preventive-Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS) on an M5 Concrete Mobile Mixer
052-252-3057	Supervise Operator's Preventive-Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS) on Concrete Equipment
052-252-3062	Supervise Operator's Preventive-Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS) on Asphalt Equipment
052-253-1048	Perform Operator's Preventive-Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS) on a 9-Wheel, Self-Propelled Roller
052-253-1052	Perform Operator's Preventive-Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS) on a Self-Propelled Vibratory Roller
052-253-1054	Perform Operator's Preventive-Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS) on a Steel Wheel Roller
052-253-1201	Perform Operator's Preventive-Maintenance Checks and Service (PMCS) on a Small-Emplacement Excavator (SEE)
052-253-1215	Perform Operator's Preventive-Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS) on a High-Speed Tamping Foot Compactor (HSC)
052-253-1236	Perform Operator's Preventive-Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS) on a Pneumatic Tool and Compressor Outfit
052-253-1238	Perform an Operator's Preventive-Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS) on a Water Distributor (1,000/6,000 Gallons)
052-253-1254	Perform Operator's Preventive-Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS) on a Truck Tractor/Semitrailer
052-254-1051	Perform an Operator's Preventive-Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS) on the Motorized Grader
052-254-1056	Perform an Operator's Preventive-Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS) on a Scoop Loader
052-254-1067	Perform an Operator's Preventive-Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS) on the Motorized Scraper
052-254-1073	Perform an Operator's Preventive-Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS) on a Deployable Universal Combat Earthmover (DEUCE)
052-255-1161	Perform Operator's Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services on a Pile Driver
052-255-1162	Perform Operator's Preventive Maintenance Checks and Service (PMCS) on a Crane
052-255-1165	Perform Operator's Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS) on a Hydraulic Excavator
091-62B-1108	Sample an Item of Construction Equipment Enrolled in the Army Oil Analysis Program (AOAP).
091-62B-1201	Repair a Wiring Harness on an Item of Construction Equipment
091-62B-1202	Replace Batteries on an Item of Construction Equipment
091-62B-1203	Replace a Starter on an Item of Construction Equipment.



**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
091-62B-1204	Replace a Switch on an Item of Construction Equipment
091-62B-1205	Replace an Alternator on an Item of Construction Equipment
091-62B-1206	Replace an Electrical Gauge on an Item of Construction Equipment
091-62B-1301	Replace a Fuel Tank on an Item of Construction Equipment
091-62B-1302	Replace a Fuel Line on an Item of Construction Equipment
091-62B-1303	Replace a Fuel Filter on an Item of Construction Equipment
091-62B-1306	Replace a Hand Primer Pump on an Item of Construction Equipment
091-62B-1307	Replace Air Filters on an Item of Construction Equipment
091-62B-1308	Replace a Turbocharger on an Item of Construction Equipment
091-62B-1309	Replace an Oil Filter on an Item of Construction Equipment
091-62B-1310	Replace an Oil Line on an Item of Construction Equipment
091-62B-1312	Replace a Thermostat on an Item of Construction Equipment
091-62B-1313	Replace an Engine Oil Cooler on an Item of Construction Equipment
091-62B-1314	Replace Drive Belts on an Item of Construction Equipment
091-62B-1315	Replace an Engine Cooling Fan on an Item of Construction Equipment
091-62B-1316	Replace a Radiator on an Item of Construction Equipment
091-62B-1317	Replace a Water Hose on an item of Construction Equipment
091-62B-1401	Repair a Hydraulic Accumulator on an Item of Construction Equipment
091-62B-1402	Replace a Hydraulic Line on an Item of Construction Equipment
091-62B-1403	Replace a Hydraulic Pump on an Item of Construction Equipment
091-62B-1404	Replace a Hydraulic Control Valve on an Item of Construction Equipment
091-62B-1405	Replace a Hydraulic Relief Valve on an Item of Construction Equipment
091-62B-1406	Replace a Hydraulic Cylinder on an Item of Construction Equipment
091-62B-1407	Replace Hydraulic Filters on an Item of Construction Equipment
091-62B-1408	Replace an Accumulator on an Item of Construction Equipment
091-62B-1409	Repair a Hydraulic Cylinder on an Item of Construction Equipment
091-62B-1501	Replace a Transmission on an Item of Construction Equipment
091-62B-1502	Replace a Driveshaft on an Item of Construction Equipment
091-62B-1503	Replace Universal Joints on an Item of Construction Equipment
091-62B-1508	Repair a Winch Brake on an Item of Construction Equipment
091-62B-1509	Repair Steering Brakes and Clutches on an Item of Construction Equipment
091-62B-1510	Repair a Clutch Assembly on an Item of Construction Equipment
091-62B-1601	Adjust the Brake Shoes on an Item of Construction Equipment
091-62B-1602	Replace a Master Cylinder on an Item of Construction Equipment
091-62B-1603	Replace a Brake Booster on an Item of Construction Equipment
091-62B-1604	Replace a Treadle Valve on an Item of Construction Equipment
091-62B-1605	Replace a Brake Air Compressor on an Item of Construction Equipment
091-62B-1606	Replace a Slack Adjuster on an Item of Construction Equipment
091-62B-1607	Replace a Brake Cylinder on an Item of Construction Equipment
091-62B-1608	Replace the Brake Lines on an Item of Construction Equipment
091-62B-1609	Replace the Brake Shoes on an Item of Construction Equipment
091-62B-1610	Replace the Brake Pads on an Item of Construction Equipment
091-62B-1611	Replace the Brake Drums on an Item of Construction Equipment
091-62B-1612	Replace the Brake Rotors on an Item of Construction Equipment
091-62B-1615	Repair a Brake Air Compressor on an Item of Construction Equipment
091-62B-1616	Repair a Brake Caliper on an Item of Construction Equipment
091-62B-1617	Replace an Air Brake Safety Valve on an Item of Construction Equipment.
091-62B-1618	Repair an Air Brake Safety Valve on an Item of Construction Equipment.
091-62B-1619	Replace a Brake Chamber on an Item of Construction Equipment.
091-62B-1701	Replace a Track on an Item of Construction Equipment
091-62B-1702	Repair a Track Assembly on an Item of Construction Equipment.
091-62B-1703	Replace a Wheel and Tire on an Item of Construction Equipment.
091-62B-1704	Replace a Drive Sprocket on an Item of Construction Equipment.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
091-62B-1705	Replace an Idler Wheel on an Item of Construction Equipment.
091-62B-1706	Replace Shock Absorbers on an Item of Construction Equipment
091-62B-1801	Replace a Cutting Edge on an Item of Construction Equipment
091-62B-1802	Replace a Ripper Tooth on an Item of Construction Equipment.
091-62B-1803	Replace a Winch Cable on an Item of Construction Equipment
091-62B-1804	Replace a Winch on an Item of Construction Equipment
091-62B-2101	Perform a Quality Assurance/Control Inspection on an Item of Construction Equipment
091-62B-2102	Perform Battle Damage Assessment and Repair (BDAR) on an Item of Construction Equipment
091-62B-2201	Replace a Wiring Harness on an Item of Construction Equipment
091-62B-2206	Troubleshoot an Accessory Circuit on an Item of Construction Equipment
091-62B-2301	Replace an Oil Pump on an Item of Construction Equipment
091-62B-2302	Replace a Fuel Injector on an Item of Construction Equipment.
091-62B-2303	Replace a Blower on an Item of Construction Equipment
091-62B-2305	Repair an Engine on an Item of Construction Equipment
091-62B-2306	Troubleshoot a Fuel System on an Item of Construction Equipment
091-62B-2307	Troubleshoot a Lubrication System on an Item of Construction Equipment
091-62B-2308	Troubleshoot a Cooling System on an Item of Construction Equipment
091-62B-2309	Troubleshoot an Air Induction System on an Item of Construction Equipment
091-62B-2401	Fabricate a Hydraulic Line on an Item of Construction Equipment.
091-62B-2402	Repair a Hydraulic Relief Valve on an Item of Construction Equipment
091-62B-2403	Repair a Hydraulic Pump on an Item of Construction Equipment
091-62B-2404	Repair a Hydraulic Control Valve on an Item of Construction Equipment
091-62B-2405	Troubleshoot a Primary Hydraulic System on an Item of Construction Equipment
091-62B-2406	Troubleshoot a Hydraulic Suspension System on an Item of Construction Equipment
091-62B-2407	Troubleshoot a Hydraulic Drive System on a Item of Construction Equipment
091-62B-2408	Troubleshoot a Hydraulic Steering System on an Item of Construction Equipment
091-62B-2509	Troubleshoot a Transmission on an Item of Construction Equipment.
091-62B-2510	Troubleshoot a Transmission on an Item of Construction Equipment
091-62B-2511	Troubleshoot a Final Drive on an Item of Construction Equipment.
091-62B-2512	Troubleshoot a Power Divider on an Item of Construction Equipment
091-62B-2513	Troubleshoot a Planetary Drive on an Item of Construction Equipment
091-62B-2514	Troubleshoot a Hydrojet on an Item of Powered Bridging Equipment
091-62B-2601	Repair a Brake Master Cylinder on an Item of Construction Equipment
091-62B-2602	Repair a Brake Booster on an Item of Construction Equipment
091-62B-2603	Troubleshoot an Air Brake System on an Item of Construction Equipment
091-62B-2604	Troubleshoot an Air-Over-Hydraulic Brake System on an Item of Construction Equipment
091-62B-3101	Perform an Initial Inspection on an Item of Construction Equipment
091-62B-3102	Perform an In-Process Inspection on an Item of Construction Equipment
091-62B-3103	Perform a Final Inspection on an Item of Construction Equipment
091-62B-3201	Determine the Cause of an Electrical-Component Malfunction on an Item of Construction Equipment
091-62B-3301	Determine the Cause of an Engine Component Failure on an Item of Construction Equipment
091-62B-3401	Determine the Cause of a Hydraulic Component Failure on an Item of Construction Equipment
091-62B-3501	Determine the Cause of a Power Train Component Malfunction on an Item of Construction Equipment
091-62B-3601	Determine the Cause of a Brake Component Failure on an Item of Construction Equipment

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-3-1041	Perform Battle Damage Assessment and Repair (BDAR)
05-3-7005	Disable Critical Equipment and Material
08-2-0003.05-T01A	Treat Casualties (for Units Without Medical Treatment Personnel)
08-2-0314.05-T01A	Treat Unit Casualties (for Units With Medical Treatment Personnel)
08-2-C316.05-T01A	Transport Casualties (for Units Without Medical Treatment Personnel)
12-1-0403.05-T01A	Report Casualties

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Equipment Section

**TASK:** Receive External Sling Load Resupply (55-2-0325.05-T01A)  
 (FM 10-450-3) (FM 10-450-4) (FM 10-450-5)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The company is alerted for incoming resupply by external sling load. The Intelligence (U.S. Army) (S2)/Operations and Training Officer (U.S. Army) (S3) section (if immediate resupply) or the Supply Officer (U.S. Army) (S4) section (if routine resupply) notifies the company of the anticipated type and amount of supplies or equipment and the scheduled delivery time. The company has personnel trained in sling load procedures. Helicopters deliver supplies and/or equipment to a designated landing zone (LZ) near the company's position. The LZ is secured. Slings and allied materials may or may not be returned with delivery helicopters to the unit of origin. The company tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) and the battalion operation order (OPORD) are available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Supplies and/or equipment are derigged and cleared from the LZ. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The company commander and element leaders develop the supply and/or equipment receipt plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Verified the quantity, type, and delivery time with the S2/S3 or S4 section.</li> <li>b. Coordinated the LZ's security and location with the S2/S3 section.</li> <li>c. Appointed a LZ officer or noncommissioned officer (NCO).</li> <li>d. Coordinated additional motor transport and special-equipment requirements with the S4 section.</li> <li>e. Assigned an appropriate number and composition of ground crews based on the tactical situation, the type and quantity of cargo, and the size of the LZ.</li> <li>f. Requested required protective equipment from the unit's supply facility.</li> <li>g. Briefed the LZ officer or NCO on the tactical situation, the size of the operation, preparation and clearance of the LZ, protective equipment, and safety precautions.</li> <li>h. Disseminated the plan to all company elements.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. The landing zone officer/NCO supervises external sling load resupply operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified wind direction and speed.</li> <li>b. Transmitted the wind direction and speed information to incoming aircraft as requested.</li> <li>c. Identified the aircraft's approach direction.</li> <li>d. Prepared the LZ emergency security and reaction plan.</li> <li>e. Identified ground crew rendezvous or rally points.</li> <li>f. Secured all required LZ marking and personnel-protection equipment.</li> <li>g. Organized ground crew teams.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>h. Briefed ground crew teams on the tactical situation, the size of the operation, preparation and clearance of the LZ, emergency procedures, protective equipment, and safety precautions.</p> <p>i. Assigned individual team member duties.</p> <p>j. Supervised derigging operations.</p> <p>k. Supervised the loading of supplies and/or equipment on motor transport vehicles.</p> <p>l. Supervised LZ clearance activities.</p> <p>m. Enforced safety procedures.</p> <p>3. Ground crews perform LZ preparation activities.</p> <p>a. Removed all obstructions from the LZ.</p> <p>b. Marked all irremovable obstructions.</p> <p>c. Cleared all loose debris from the LZ.</p> <p>d. Set up all required visual markers.</p> <p>e. Positioned vehicles and other special equipment out of the LZ.</p> <p>f. Rehearsed hand or arm and other visual signals.</p> <p>4. Ground crews derig external sling load supplies or equipment.</p> <p>a. Wore hearing and eye protection.</p> <p>b. Used safety precautions.</p> <p>c. Used visual signals to guide the helicopter to the derigging point.</p> <p>d. Grounded the static discharge probe to the cargo hook.</p> <p>e. Released the load from the helicopter.</p> <p>f. Provided the "affirmative" signal to the pilot for liftoff when the load was unhooked and cleared of the helicopter.</p> <p>5. Ground crews prepare slings and/or nets for air transport retrograde.</p> <p>a. Removed the cargo sling and/or nets from the supplies or equipment.</p> <p>b. Secured all slings and/or nets in a cargo net.</p> <p>c. Used the proper hand signals to guide the helicopter into position.</p> <p>d. Grounded the static discharge probe to the net rings.</p> <p>e. Connected sling equipment to the helicopter cargo hook.</p> <p>f. Provided the "affirmative" signal to the pilot for liftoff when the net was secure and all personnel were clear.</p> <p>6. Ground crews and vehicle operators clear the LZ.</p> <p>a. Loaded all supplies or equipment on the vehicles.</p> <p>b. Loaded all slings and/or nets and markers on the vehicles.</p> <p>c. Removed all loose debris from the LZ.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-1-0017	Integrate Augmentation Support

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Two Engineer Platoons  
Six Engineer Squads  
Company Headquarters

**TASK:** Integrate Augmentation Support (05-1-0017)  
(FM 5-100-15) (FM 3-34)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is conducting missions in support of higher headquarters (HQ). The element is tasked with a mission that requires additional resources and augmentation support from nonorganic elements. Augmentation support is available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element determines the augmentation support necessary to accomplish the mission, submits the request immediately after the estimate process, and effects coordination and logistical support that provides for unhindered mission execution by the attached element. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader performs mission analysis and determines resource requirements and availability during the estimate process.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined the resources required to accomplish the mission.</li> <li>b. Determined the availability of organic resources.</li> <li>c. Included requirements for rations, maintenance, fuel, and lubricants to support augmentation element(s), to include shortfalls such as equipment maintenance.</li> </ul> <p>2. The element submits a request for augmentation support.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Requested augmentation support from higher HQ.</li> <li>b. Submitted the request immediately after the estimate process was complete.</li> <li>c. Included, as a minimum, the following information in the request.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Type of command support relationship.</li> <li>(2) Amount and type of personnel and equipment needed.</li> <li>(3) Length of time augmentation support is required.</li> <li>(4) Mission of the supported element.</li> <li>(5) Mission of the augmentation support element.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>3. The element modifies the estimate process based on the actual augmentation support received.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Prioritized the missions for the supporting element.</li> <li>b. Established the coordination for logistical support based on the command support relationship, such as food, fuel, and maintenance.</li> </ul> <p>4. The coordinating element coordinates with the augmentation element.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined the operation order (OPORD) requirements.</li> <li>b. Determined the time and place for the liaison between the augmentation element and the supported element.</li> </ul> <p>5. The element receiving support monitors the supporting element.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Received personnel strength, maintenance status, mission status, and updates as required from the augmented element.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Shifted assets as necessary. c. Visited the element to maintain high morale.  6. The supported element— a. Provided the augmentee(s) with the subordinate unit work requirements. b. Accounted for equipment and personnel. c. Reported the status and disposition of supporting units personnel and equipment according to the unit standing operating procedures (SOP). d. Supervised the execution of the mission(s). e. Inspected the quality of the workmanship. f. Reported mission accomplishment to higher and receiving HQ.  7. The augmented element releases the augmentee(s) back to their parent unit. a. Reported departure of the augmentee element. b. Updated the augmented unit status.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
171-145-0004	Prepare/Send Logistical Status Reports Using FBCB2

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-0081	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD)
05-2-0018	Conduct Report Procedures
05-6-0002	Prepare an Engineer Estimate
12-2-0338.05-T01A	Maintain Troop Morale and Combat Capability

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



- ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Three Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Nine Engineer Squads  
 Two Equipment Sections  
 Obstacle Section  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Three Assault and Obstacle Sections

**TASK:** Plan and Control Tactical Obstacles (05-2-2013)  
 (FM 90-7) (FM 20-32)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is providing support to a maneuver task force (TF). The TF is preparing for defensive operations. Obstacle and survivability plans are approved. The element leader has task-organized the engineer assets needed to emplace directed obstacles. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The obstacles are correctly sited, built to standard, and handed over to maneuver forces according to the established timelines. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The element leader conducts a mission analysis.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined the facts and developed assumptions.</li> <li>b. Analyzed the higher headquarters (HQ) mission and the commander's intent.</li> <li>c. Analyzed the relative combat power.</li> <li>d. Issued the commander's guidance.</li> </ul> </li> <li>2. The element develops a course of action (COA).                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducted a fires analysis.</li> <li>b. Developed an obstacle intent integration.</li> <li>c. Directed obstacle priorities.</li> </ul> </li> <li>3. The element conducts a COA analysis.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Analyzed enemy reactions at obstacle groups versus the desired obstacle effect.</li> <li>b. Planned obstacle locations that inhibit friendly maneuver.</li> <li>c. Determined compatible obstacle effects and weapon system capabilities.</li> <li>d. Planned adequate fire control measures to support obstacle effect.</li> </ul> </li> <li>4. The element war-games and adjusts the COA.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Changed locations of the directed obstacle groups, if required.</li> <li>b. Changed the obstacle effect at a specific location, if required.</li> <li>c. Identified other mobility requirements, if required.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 5. The element leader issues the decision and execution guidance.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Issued a scheme-of-obstacles overlay.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>b. Issued an obstacle execution matrix.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Assigned the zone, belt, or group designation and individual obstacle numbers.</li> <li>(2) Provided the location, grid coordinates or a center of mass grid for the group, start and end points of the group trace, or grid coordinates for individual obstacles, if known.</li> <li>(3) Identified effects of the obstacle group.</li> <li>(4) Provided priorities for the obstacle group.</li> <li>(5) Assigned the emplacing and owning unit.</li> <li>(6) Provided the location of any lanes and closure instructions or reference to a reserve obstacle matrix, if appropriate.</li> <li>(7) Allocated materials or assets for the group.</li> <li>(8) Assigned the location of obstacle materials (Class IV and Class V point or other site).</li> </ul> <p>* 6. The element leader supervises an obstacle emplacement.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that fire support targets were refined.</li> <li>b. Coordinated for critical friendly zones (CFZs).</li> <li>c. Coordinated for air defense artillery (ADA) coverage.</li> <li>d. Coordinated the linkups between the engineer elements and the supported units.</li> <li>e. Briefed higher HQs on the intent of the obstacle group, to include a tentative obstacle group design.</li> <li>f. Informed higher HQs on the type of mine distribution method to use.</li> <li>g. Provided higher HQs with a timeline for countermobility efforts.</li> <li>h. Coordinated for maneuver support to assist in the obstacle emplacement.</li> </ul> <p>7. The element command post (CP) monitors the obstacle emplacement.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Monitored the progress, reported the status, and adjusted the execution matrix, as required.</li> <li>b. Tracked the turnover of completed obstacles to the overwatching maneuver units.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
052-192-2083	Perform Troubleshooting Procedures on a Volcano
052-192-3125	Direct a Row Minefield Siting Party

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-1-0006	Integrate Engineer Elements Into the Fire Support (FS) Planning Process
05-2-0100	Coordinate the Synchronization and Integration of Fire Support (FS)
05-2-2012	Provide Support for Countermobility Operations

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Three Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Company Headquarters Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Equipment Section

**TASK:** Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon) (05-2-7008)  
 (FM 5-71-2) (FM 101-5-2) (FM 1-02)  
 (FM 5-34)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit is performing tactical operations. The unit receives a new mission that requires the preparation of an OPORD. The unit may or may not be linked to a task force (TF) or part of a tactical operations center (TOC). This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The OPORD follows the intent of the commander, is understandable, and contains all of the information necessary to accomplish the mission. The development and issuance of the OPORD follows the one-third, two-thirds rule.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader is given a mission from a higher headquarters (HQ). The element leader must prepare and present an OPORD to subordinate elements.</p> <p>* 2. The element leader addresses the situation.</p> <p>a. Briefed the element on the enemy forces.</p> <p>(1) Included important terrain characteristics and the significance to the unit and mission (observation and fields of fire, avenues of approach, key terrain, obstacles and movement, and cover and concealment [OAKOC]).</p> <p>(2) Included advantages and disadvantages to the enemy and friendly maneuver and engineer operations.</p> <p>(3) Included light data and expected weather and the impact they can have on the operation.</p> <p>b. Briefed the enemy composition, disposition, and strength two levels down.</p> <p><b>NOTE: If a company level unit is preparing the OPORD, the leader issuing the order would brief the enemy paragraph to cover the enemy squad level.</b></p> <p>(1) Focused on the enemy the element will fight, adjacent enemy units in the area of operations, and those units that could reinforce an enemy attack or defense.</p> <p>(2) Briefed the type of enemy unit; how it is equipped; and its designation, location, size, and strength.</p>		

**NOTE: When briefing enemy strengths, use specific numbers.**

- (3) Briefed the pertinent and current enemy activities.
- (4) Briefed the known and templated enemy locations and activities.
- c. Briefed the enemy capabilities.
  - (1) Briefed their combat capabilities (range and orientation of direct/indirect fires; counterattack forces; reserves; nuclear, biological, and chemical [NBC]; and ability to reposition).
  - (2) Briefed their mobility, countermobility, and survivability capabilities.

**NOTE: This includes amount, type, location, expected employment of breaching assets, tactical and protective obstacles, and scatterable mines and the expected fortification for vehicles and infantry.**

- d. Briefed the enemy intentions.
  - (1) Included the most probable course of enemy action and the most dangerous course of action.
  - (2) Included the probable enemy reaction to an attack or defense and the expected employment of mobility, countermobility, and survivability assets.
  - (3) Included critical enemy events that the element should look for during an engagement.

**NOTE: A sand table, map(s), sketches, or other visual aids should be used to brief when possible.**

- e. Briefed the element on friendly forces.
  - (1) Briefed the mission of higher HQ.
    - (a) Included the mission and intent of the commanders two levels up.
    - (b) Included the TF mission, the TF commander's intent, and the scheme of maneuver/concept of the operation.

**NOTE: The friendly forces briefing should be complete enough that the element understands the indirect-fire plan and maneuver plans of the supported unit.**

- (c) Included the scheme of engineer operations (SOEO) to support the maneuver unit scheme of maneuver.
- (2) Briefed the element on adjacent units.
  - (a) Identified the maneuver missions/events/forces of adjacent units as they affect a supported unit and an engineer element mission, and included specifics of adjacent engineer units, if appropriate.
  - (b) Identified units on the flanks, to the front, and, possibly, the rear.
- (3) Briefed the element on attachments and detachments and specified when they became effective.

**NOTE: Do not include this subparagraph if the attached/detached units are clear in the task organization briefed in the beginning of the OPORD. If the attachment(s) are from/to the engineer element, it should be included in the brief.**

- \* 3. The element leader addresses the mission.
  - a. Presented a clear concise statement of the element mission.
  - b. Included who, what, when, where, and why.

- \* 4. The element leader addresses the execution.
  - a. Briefed the intent of the element leader.
    - (1) Presented a clear, concise statement of what the force must do to succeed, with respect to the enemy and the terrain, to the desired end state.
    - (2) Provided a link between the mission and the concept of the operation by stating key tasks that, with the mission, are the basis for subordinates to exercise an initiative when unanticipated opportunities arise or when the original concept no longer applies.
  - b. Briefed the concept of the operation.
    - (1) Briefed concisely and was understandable.
    - (2) Described the employment of subordinate elements, the integration of other elements or systems within the operation, and other aspects of the operation that the element leader considered appropriate to clarify the concept and unity of effort.

**NOTE: Depending on the operation, the following subparagraphs may be required within the concept of the operation.**

**1. Maneuver.**

**2. Fires.**

**3. Engineer.**

**4. Air Defense.**

- c. Tasked to subordinate units.
  - (1) Listed specific tasks and purposes to subunits under control of the element.
  - (2) Briefed the subunits in the same order as the task organization.
  - (3) Briefed missions/tasks common to two or more subunits in the coordinating instructions.

**NOTE: Do not include standing operating procedure (SOP) items unless required for emphasis or they are a change from the normal SOP.**

**As a minimum, include:**

- 1. Reference to obstacle-execution or survivability matrixes.**
- 2. Commander's critical information requirements (CCIR).**
- 3. Operational exposure guidance (OEG).**
- 4. Mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) status level.**
- 5. Air defense warning and weapons control status.**
- 6. Directed coordination between subunits or adjacent units.**
- 7. Sleep plan.**
- 8. Priorities of work.**
- 9. Lane marking system.**
- 10. Obstacle restrictions, belts, or zones that can have an effect.**
- 11. Rehearsals.**
- 12. Rules of engagement (ROE).**
- 13. Environmental considerations.**
- 14. Instructions on consolidation and reorganization.**
  - d. Instructed element(s) on reporting requirements, tasks, and instructions for coordination common to two or more subunits within the element.
    - (1) Briefed the time or condition in which the order became effective; the CCIR; the priority intelligence requirements (PIR); the friendly force information requirements (FFIR); risk reduction control measures specific to the operation; the ROE; and the environmental considerations.

(2) Issued the coordinating instructions subparagraph as the last paragraph within the execution paragraph.

- \* 5. The element leader addresses service support.
- a. Briefed the combat service support (CSS) plan for the before, during, and after operations.
  - b. Designated primary and backup channels for logistical support for all subunits.
  - c. Identified and briefed the type of resupply/logistics package (LOGPAC) to be used and locations of resupply points and times.
- NOTE: If operational graphics are provided to subunits, a CSS brief is not needed if it provides the same information that would be given in the briefing.**
- d. Briefed material and service issues.
    - (1) Outlined the allocations of command-regulated materials.
    - (2) Stated the services available to the elements through the higher HQ or supported unit.
    - (3) Identified any special allowances/plans made for sustaining special engineer equipment or forces.
  - e. Briefed supply issues.
    - (1) Listed the basic loads the element will maintain.
    - (2) Listed the method of obtaining supplies if different from the support concept.
      - (a) Class I.
        1. Ration cycle.
        2. Basic load the element will maintain (days of supply).
      - (b) Class III.
        1. Refueling times and locations.
        2. Location of emergency Class III.
      - (c) Class IV. Allocation, location, quantity, and type of barrier materials available.
      - (d) Class V.
        1. Allocation of basic-load small arms.
        2. Allocation of basic demolitions.
        3. Type of mine resupply to be used.
        4. Location, type, and amount of emergency.
        5. Reload plans for mechanical mine dispensing systems.
        6. Any additional special purpose munitions (if used must specify purpose, priority allocation and restrictions).
      - (e) Class VIII. Availability and location of medical resupplies.
      - (f) Class IX. Allocation and location of critical repair parts.
      - (g) Other classes of supply as necessary.
  - f. Briefed maintenance issues.
    - (1) Briefed the location of maintenance and recovery support.
    - (2) Identified the maintenance priorities by vehicle, unit, or a combination of both.
    - (3) Identified the authority for controlled substitution.
  - g. Briefed the medical evacuation.
    - (1) Identified the wounded in action medical evacuation plan, to include primary and alternate pick up zones.
    - (2) Identified locations to transfer casualties if not by medical evacuation (MEDEVAC).
    - (3) Identified evacuation plans for NBC contaminated Soldiers and equipment.
  - h. Briefed the personnel support.
    - (1) Enemy prisoners of war (EPWs) handling.
    - (2) Mail.

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(3) Religious services.</li> <li>(4) Graves registration.</li> <li>i. Briefed civilian and military personnel, and identified engineer supplies, services, or equipment provided by the host nation (HN).</li> </ul> <p>* 6. The element leader addresses command and signal.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Briefed the command.             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Identified key leader locations during each phase of the operation.</li> <li>(2) Briefed the location of the command and control (C2) node during each phase of the operation.</li> <li>(3) Briefed the succession of command that supports the continuity of command during battle.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Briefed signal.             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Briefed communications/signal peculiarities for the operation (specific code words).</li> <li>(2) Briefed visual/audio signals critical to the battle or for emergency use.</li> <li>(3) Briefed the signal operation instructions (SOI) index and when radio silence is in effect.</li> <li>(4) Briefed the method for communications and priority, frequency-modulated (FM) nets that the element leader wants the subunits to use to simplify C2.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>			
--	--	--	--

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
052-238-4508	Prepare a Diving-Mission Operation Order (OPORD)
071-326-5626	Prepare an Oral Operation Order

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-6000	Identify Geospatial Support Requirements
05-1-6001	Request a Standard Geospatial Product
05-1-6002	Request Nonstandard Geospatial Products
05-2-6007	Identify Terrain Information Requirements
05-4-1372	Disseminate Terrain Information Product
05-4-1376	Perform a Geospatial Collection Effort
05-6-0088	Coordinate Geospatial Operations

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



- ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Three Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Nine Engineer Squads  
 Company Headquarters Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Equipment Sections  
 Maintenance Section  
 Brigade Engineer Section  
 Company  
 Obstacle Section  
 Equipment Section  
 Unit Maintenance Section  
 Equipment Platoon  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Three Assault and Obstacle Sections  
 Regimental Engineer Section  
 Combat Medic Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads

**TASK:** Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures (05-3-0013)  
 (FM 5-10) (FM 3-90.1) (FM 5-0)  
 (FM 5-422) (FM 5-71-2) (FM 7-7)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element receives a mission from a warning order (WARNO), a fragmentary order (FRAGO), or an operation order (OPORD) to perform operations. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit leader gives a WARNO, conducts a leader's reconnaissance, issues an OPORD, and supervises the preparation for the assigned mission within the allotted time. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader receives the mission in a WARNO, a FRAGO, or an OPORD from his higher headquarters (HQ). He determines the mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC); the needed supplies and equipment; and special tasks to assign.  <b>NOTE: Digital units send and receive orders using the Army Battle Command System (ABCS) or a frequency-modulated (FM) method according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).</b></p> <p>* 2. The element leader issues a WARNO to subordinate leaders.                      a. Stated the mission (nature of the operation).                      b. Identified the task organization.                      c. Stated the time of the operation.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. Provided any special instructions, such as drills to be rehearsed, precombat checks (PCCs), and precombat inspections (PCIs).</p> <p>e. Stated the element timeline.</p> <p>* 3. The element leader develops a tentative plan while the element prepares for the mission.</p> <p>a. Developed the plan based on METT-TC factors.</p> <p>b. Planned the available time using the reverse-planning process.</p> <p>c. Used no more than one-third of the available time, leaving the remainder for subordinate element preparation.</p> <p>d. Ensured that subordinate leaders began the PCCs and reconfigured the equipment based on the mission, to include checking rations, water, weapons, ammunition, individual uniforms and equipment, mission-essential equipment, and the individual Soldiers' knowledge of the mission.</p> <p>4. The element continues assembly area activities and security.</p> <p>a. Maintained equipment and weapons.</p> <p>b. Performed personal hygiene.</p> <p>c. Resupplied equipment and materiel, to include small arms, ammunition, demolitions, mines, and refueling of vehicles.</p> <p>d. Rehearsed battle and crew drills.</p> <p>e. Performed weapons test firing.</p> <p>f. Ate meals in a timely manner.</p> <p>g. Rested.</p> <p>h. Maintained security.</p> <p>* 5. The element leader initiates movement before completing the plan.  <b>NOTE: Subordinate leaders move the element in the absence of the element leader. This task step may be omitted, occur in a different sequence, or be done concurrently with another task step.</b></p> <p>* 6. The element leader performs a reconnaissance.  <b>NOTE: Digital units request intelligence information by requesting All-Source Analysis System (ASAS) information and Digital Topographic Support System (DTSS) products from higher HQ.</b></p> <p>a. Performed a map reconnaissance, as a minimum, along with subordinate leaders when practical.</p> <p>b. Performed a ground reconnaissance (usually as part of a larger force).</p> <p>(1) Included as many subordinate leaders as practical.</p> <p>(2) Identified the critical areas of the mission.</p> <p>(3) Moved as far forward as the time and situation permitted.</p> <p>* 7. The element leader completes the plan.</p> <p>a. Made changes to the tentative plan based on the map or ground reconnaissance.</p> <p>b. Made changes to the tentative plan based on available equipment, personnel, and material.</p> <p>c. Made changes to the tentative plan based on the intelligence gained by reconnaissance assets.</p> <p>* 8. The element leader verbally issues the completed order, in a FRAGO or OPORD format, to subordinate and attached leaders. The order contained the following information and could be given to the entire element at the same time.</p> <p>a. SITUATION.</p> <p>(1) Enemy forces.</p> <p>(2) Friendly forces.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(3) Attachments and detachments.</p> <p>b. MISSION.</p> <p>c. EXECUTION.</p> <p>(1) Concept of the operation.</p> <p>(a) Scheme of maneuver.</p> <p>(b) Fires.</p> <p>(c) Reconnaissance and surveillance.</p> <p>(d) Intelligence.</p> <p>(e) Engineer support.</p> <p>(f) Air defense.</p> <p>(g) Information operations.</p> <p>(2) Subunit tasks.</p> <p>(3) Coordinating instructions. At a minimum, the element leader must address the—</p> <p>(a) Time or condition when the plan or order becomes effective.</p> <p>(b) Commander's critical-information requirements (CCIR).</p> <p>(c) Risk reduction control measures.</p> <p><b>NOTE: The element leader determines the risk reduction control measures by using the five steps of the risk management process, referring to Field Manual (FM) 5-0 for additional information.</b></p> <p>(d) Rules of engagement.</p> <p>(e) Environmental considerations.</p> <p>(f) Force protection.</p> <p>d. SERVICE SUPPORT.</p> <p>(1) Support concept.</p> <p>(2) Materials and services.</p> <p>(3) Medical evacuation and hospitalization.</p> <p>(4) Personnel.</p> <p>(5) Civilian and military.</p> <p>e. COMMAND AND SIGNAL.</p> <p>(1) Command.</p> <p>(a) The location of the element leadership, support element leadership, and command posts for the operation.</p> <p>(b) Succession of command. (If not stated in the element SOP or tactical standing operating procedure [TACSOP]).</p> <p>(2) Signal.</p> <p>(a) Signal operation instructions (SOI) in effect.</p> <p>(b) Radio communication restrictions.</p> <p>(c) Visual and pyrotechnic signals.</p> <p>(d) Code words and reports specific to the operation.</p> <p>(e) Communications security (COMSEC) guidelines and procedures.</p> <p>* 9. Subordinate leaders complete the PCCs, and element leaders perform the PCIs.</p> <p><b>NOTE: Subordinate leaders can perform the PCCs on receipt of a WARNO or FRAGO. The element should have mission-specific PCC or PCI checklists in the unit TACSOP.</b></p> <p>a. Checked and inventoried equipment. Ensured that the items were serviceable and that the element had the items specified in the unit SOP and the items required for specific mission.</p> <p>b. Ensured that adequate resupply of ammunition, food, water, repair parts, fuel, medical supplies, obstacle material, demolitions, and mines were available.</p> <p>c. Performed a communications check.</p> <p>d. Ensured that personnel, equipment, and carriers were camouflaged and that weapons were test fired.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
e. Ensured that personnel understood their task and purpose and that of the element HQ. f. Inspected personnel, vehicles, weapons, and equipment just before starting the mission.		
*10. Leaders perform at least one type of rehearsal.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
071-326-5505	Issue an Oral Operation Order
071-326-5626	Prepare an Oral Operation Order

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-0081	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD)
05-1-6001	Request a Standard Geospatial Product
05-1-6002	Request Nonstandard Geospatial Products
05-3-3006	Establish Jobsite Security
71-2-0326.05-T01A	Perform Risk Management Procedures

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Three Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Nine Engineer Squads  
 Equipment Platoon  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Three Assault and Obstacle Sections  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads

**TASK:** Integrate Engineer Elements Into the Maneuver Element (05-3-0300)  
 (FM 3-34) (FM 5-71-100) (FM 5-71-2)  
 (FM 5-71-3)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Engineer elements have been received from higher headquarters (HQ) to support task force (TF) operations. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Engineer elements must be integrated into the TF scheme of maneuver according to the commander's intent and must synchronize the engineer effort in conjunction with other battlefield operating systems (BOS). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>1. The TF engineer advises the TF commander on the use of engineer assets.  <b>NOTE: The digital units use the Army Battle Command System (ABCS) to perform collaborative planning, send orders and reports, and update digital overlays.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed mission analysis and recommended the task organization.</li> <li>b. Recommended the command and support relationship.</li> <li>c. Sent a warning order (WARNO) to subordinate units.</li> <li>d. Participated in the staff orders process, ensuring that the engineers were integrated into the process for fire support (FS), reconnaissance and surveillance (R&amp;S), and intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB).</li> <li>e. Briefed subordinate leaders on the scheme of maneuver and the commander's intent.</li> <li>f. Monitored engineer activities and made recommendations, as necessary.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. The element leader prepares the units for movement and linkup operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Directed precombat checks (PCCs) and precombat inspections (PCIs).</li> <li>b. Reviewed drills and orders.</li> <li>c. Participated in combined arms reconnaissance planning.</li> <li>d. Conducted linkup operations and received the operation order (OPORD) briefing.</li> <li>e. Participated in combined arms rehearsals.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-1-0006	Integrate Engineer Elements Into the Fire Support (FS) Planning Process
05-1-0022	Integrate Engineer Reconnaissance Into the Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance (ISR) Plan
05-1-0081	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD)
05-2-0027	Perform an Engineer Battlefield Assessment (Company)
12-1-0408.05-T01A	Participate in the Operation Order (OPORD) Process

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Three Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Company Headquarters Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Brigade Engineer Section  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Equipment Section

**TASK:** Prepare an Engineer Estimate (05-6-0002)  
 (FM 5-34) (FM 3-34) (FM 5-0)  
 (FM 5-102) (FM 5-103) (FM 5-71-100)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The engineer element is supporting an engineer command and control (C2) element or maneuver task force. The element receives a fragmentary order (FRAGO), an operation order (OPORD), or a supplementary order from higher headquarters (HQ) to prepare an engineer estimate. The staff section is required to perform the engineer estimate in support of the higher level OPORD. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The engineer element develops an engineer estimate that gives the commander feasible courses of action (COAs) consistent with the supported commander's scheme of maneuver. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The commander (aided by his staff) performs a mission analysis.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed an engineer battlefield assessment (EBA).</li> <li>b. Identified the intent of the immediate commander and the commander two levels up.</li> <li>c. Identified the area of operations (AO).</li> <li>d. Identified the specified and implied tasks to perform and decided which were essential.</li> <li>e. Identified constraints and restraints.</li> <li>f. Restated the unit mission in terms of who, what (including all essential tasks), when, where, and why.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. The commander (aided by his staff) performs a situation analysis.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified the composition of supported forces, unusual requirements, and other factors affecting the size and scope of the support mission.</li> <li>b. Identified the characteristics of the AO and the enemy situation.</li> <li>c. Analyzed weather conditions, terrain, equipment, and troops available to support the mission.</li> <li>d. Assessed specific capabilities for breaching, gap crossing, emplacing obstacles and remotely delivered mines, and survivability.</li> <li>e. Predicted possible enemy COAs.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. The commander and staff evaluate their own unit situation.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified the disposition of major tactical elements, possible COAs, and current projected operations.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Identified the disposition of logistics units and facilities supporting engineer operations.</li> <li>c. Identified the disposition and capabilities of battalion elements, estimated completion times of current tasks, and available combat support (CS) units to assist with engineer tasks.</li> </ul> <p>4. The commander (aided by his staff) develops a scheme of engineer operations (SOEO) to support each maneuver COA.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified requirements, to include all tasks and the necessary resources to accomplish them, by each location or by each supported element.</li> <li>b. Summarized resource requirements by platoon hours, equipment, and logistics for each location or supported unit.</li> <li>c. Determined general priorities for tasks based on the higher commander's guidance.</li> <li>d. Employed engineer forces to accomplish the commander's guidance and all tasks.</li> </ul> <p>5. The commander (aided by his staff) war-games the engineer estimate for each COA.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Evaluated the engineer estimate against significant factors impacting it.</li> <li>b. Determined shortfalls by comparing resource requirements with available assets.</li> <li>c. Reduced shortfalls by establishing priorities, sequencing activities, selecting alternate methods, and altering the engineer estimate along with assistance from the supported unit Assistant Chief of Staff, G3 (Operations and Plans) (G3) or the Operations and Training Officer (U.S. Army) (S3).</li> </ul> <p>6. The commander (aided by his staff) compares each COA and selects the one that best accomplishes the mission and the supporting scheme of maneuver.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined the technique to use in the comparison.</li> <li>b. Used the significant factors that were identified during the war-gaming process.</li> <li>c. Selected the best COA based on a subjective judgment and not entirely upon a numerical technique.</li> </ul> <p>* 7. The commander states his decision clearly to his subordinates.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined the group or brigade task organization and allocated resources.</li> <li>b. Assigned tasks to subordinate elements.</li> </ul> <p>* 8. The commander makes a recommendation to higher HQ.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Stated which COA his troops could best support from the engineer perspective.</li> <li>b. Identified major deficiencies that higher HQ must remedy, including recommendations for eliminating or reducing deficiencies.</li> <li>c. Recommended the engineer task organization, command or support relationship, tasks directed to the subordinate elements, and the priorities for engineer support.</li> </ul>		



TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-6001	Request a Standard Geospatial Product
05-1-6002	Request Nonstandard Geospatial Products

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Three Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Company Headquarters Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Brigade Engineer Section  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Equipment Section

**TASK:** Prepare an Engineer Annex (05-6-0003)  
 (FM 3-34)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The commander and his staff must prepare an engineer annex as part of the maneuver unit operation order (OPORD). Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The engineer annex contains essential information needed to support the maneuver commander's operation. The annex concept is clear and understood by the maneuver force. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The staff engineer selects an engineer format based on the amount and type of information it will contain, the time available to produce it, and guidance from the maneuver unit Assistant Chief of Staff, G3 (Operations and Plans) (G3) or the Operations and Training Officer (U.S. Army) (S3).                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Wrote the annex using the five-paragraph format.</li> <li>b. Included overlays of existing and proposed friendly obstacles and their control measures; known and templated enemy obstacles; and nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) contaminated areas.</li> <li>c. Prepared an obstacle list containing all directed obstacles.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. The staff ensures that the annex includes the information that was derived during the estimate process.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the annex contained information related to the engineer plan that was not covered elsewhere in the order.</li> <li>b. Ensured that the annex did not contain items covered in the standing operating procedure (SOP) unless needed for clarity.</li> <li>c. Ensured that the annex was directed at the major subordinate elements of the maneuver unit and not the supporting engineer units.</li> <li>d. Ensured that the annex was clear, complete, brief, and timely and avoided qualified directives.</li> <li>e. Ensured that the annex was fully integrated with other parts of the OPORD.</li> <li>f. Coordinated all tasks directed at units (other than the engineers) before issuing the annex.</li> <li>g. Coordinated with the appropriate battle staff element before including the annex.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
3. The staff engineer ensures that the written annex complies with the five-paragraph format. The OPORD— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Stated the enemy and friendly situations and the situation of attachments and detachments.</li> <li>b. Stated the mission (same as the maneuver unit being supported).</li> <li>c. Stated the execution of the mission, to include coordinating instructions.</li> <li>d. Stated service support requirements, such as command-regulated classes of supply, engineer forward supply points, haul assets, and host-nation (HN) support.</li> <li>e. Stated command and signal instructions, to include the location of the command post (CP), the call signs of the supporting units from another headquarters (HQ), and any alternate means of communication.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-0081	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD)
05-6-0002	Prepare an Engineer Estimate

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** Company Headquarters

**TASK:** Establish a Command Post (CP) (05-6-0010)  
(FM 5-0)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The advance or quartering party has secured a new area. Staff sections have assigned personnel to establish the forward CP. The tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) with the duties of the advance element is available. The Intelligence Officer (U.S. Army) (S2) or the Operations and Training Officer (U.S. Army) (S3) section has provided instructions relating to the preparation of the CP site. The communication requirements have been determined and requested. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The staff element and headquarters (HQ) company personnel continue operations during the company HQ "jump" to a new location. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>1. The advance-party element establishes the forward CP.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Positioned the vehicles, tentage, and equipment to be used according to the layout plan.</li> <li>b. Set up the internal arrangement to permit immediate access to all required information.</li> <li>c. Set up maps and overlays that displayed the locations of the facilities of the proponent.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: Digital units provide digital products and operate systems to give the commander the common operational picture (COP) and situational awareness (SA) to conduct combat operations.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>d. Constructed barriers around the forward CP as prescribed by the TACSOP.</li> </ul> <p>2. The advance-party element provides staff supervision over forward tactical operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided staff supervision over the establishment of the CP area to ensure compliance with the layout plan and the TACSOP.</li> <li>b. Established communications with higher HQ and adjacent and subordinate units as prescribed by the movement order and the TACSOP.</li> <li>c. Provided movement assistance to the subordinate units that were out of the range of rear CP communications.</li> <li>d. Maintained SA overlays with the current disposition of the friendly and enemy units.</li> </ul> <p>3. The advance-party element provides staff supervision over forward support operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained current, updated reports of all assets.</li> <li>b. Maintained current, updated reports of the availability of assets.</li> <li>c. Maintained SA overlays with current friendly facilities in the company area of responsibility.</li> <li>d. Maintained current customer listings.</li> <li>e. Maintained current staff files and journals.</li> <li>f. Relayed operational information from customer units to the rear company HQ that affected the support operations.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
g. Provided current operations briefings to the S2, S3, and respective staff sections upon the arrival of the main body.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
03-2-3008.05-T01A	Conduct a Radiological, Chemical, or Biological Reconnaissance or Survey

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Three Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Nine Engineer Squads  
 Company Headquarters Section  
 Support Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Equipment Sections  
 Maintenance Section  
 Brigade Engineer Section  
 Obstacle Section  
 Equipment Section  
 Unit Maintenance Section  
 Equipment Platoon  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Mobility and Countermobility Section  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Three Assault and Obstacle Sections  
 Regimental Engineer Section  
 Combat Medic Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Six Engineer Squads

**TASK:** Establish and Operate a Single-Channel Voice Radio Net (11-3-0214.05-T01A)  
 (FM 24-18) (FM 24-1) (FM 24-19)  
 (FM 24-33)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is tactically deployed and must establish the communications network. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. The operators have been briefed and issued extracts from the signal operation instructions (SOI), the signal supplemental instructions (SSI), the numerical cipher, the authenticated system, the operations codes, and the brevity lists. Situational hazards exist, such as nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) conditions; opposing forces (OPFOR); electronic warfare (EW); and directional-finding ability. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The operators establish and enter a radio net no later than the time prescribed in the operation order (OPORD) or the operation plan (OPLAN). Digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The net is not compromised. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. Radio operators install a radio set for operation. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Secured radios in the mount.</li> <li>b. Connected audio accessories.</li> <li>c. Installed antennas.</li> <li>d. Performed before-operation, preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS).</li> <li>e. Performed radio operational checks.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>2. Radio operators make initial entry into the nets.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Obtained appropriate call signs, suffixes, and frequencies from the SOI or SSI.</li> <li>b. Entered a radio net.</li> <li>c. Authenticated when challenged by the net control station (NCS).</li> </ul> <p>3. Radio operators recognize frequency interference.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Recognized jamming or interference.</li> <li>b. Determined if the interference was internal or external.</li> <li>c. Determined if the interference was intentional or unintentional.</li> </ul> <p>4. Radio operators initiate prescribed electronic counter-countermeasures (ECCM).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Continued to operate.</li> <li>b. Increased the transmit power.</li> <li>c. Tuned the receiver for max signal.</li> <li>d. Relocated the antenna.</li> <li>e. Requested a change of frequency.</li> <li>f. Reported suspected jamming to the immediate supervisor.</li> <li>g. Submitted meaconing, intrusion, jamming, and interference (MIJI) feder reports.</li> </ul> <p>5. Radio operators employ preventive ECCM and radio procedures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used communications security (COMSEC) equipment (secure), if available (transmission security [TSEC]/KY-38 or TSEC/KY-57).</li> <li>b. Loaded the appropriate key variables using KYK-13 or KOI-15.</li> <li>c. Operated only approved radiotelephone procedures as required by the SOI/SSI.</li> <li>d. Encrypted and decrypted grid coordinates using the SOI/SSI (not necessary in secure voice operation).</li> <li>e. Ensured that the length was not more than 20 seconds per transmission and that the number of transmissions was at a minimum.</li> <li>f. Operated on the lowest power setting required to communicate with desired stations.</li> <li>g. Employed the correct call signs and frequencies.</li> <li>h. Observed periods of radio-listening silence.</li> <li>i. Complied with net discipline.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
43-2-0001.05-T01A	Conduct Unit Level Maintenance Operations

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**





TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Established and maintained camouflage discipline.</li> <li>c. Ensured that the location provided effective use of the terrain in an electronic warfare (EW) environment.</li> <li>d. Ensured that the location avoided interference from power lines and other friendly sources of frequency interference.</li> </ul> <p>3. Net members perform pre-mission checks for a SINGARS FH cold-start net opening.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed before-operation PMCS.</li> <li>b. Loaded the transmission security key (TSK) using MX-10579 or MS-18290 (nonintegrated communications security [non-ICOM] only).</li> <li>c. Loaded the hop set using MX-18290 (integrated communications security [ICOM] only).</li> <li>d. Loaded the traffic encryption key (TEK) using KYK-13.</li> </ul> <p>4. The net control station (NCS) performs pre-mission checks for the SINGARS FH cold-start net opening.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed preoperational PMCS.</li> <li>b. Loaded the TSK and the hop set using MX-10579 or MX18290 (non-ICOM only).</li> <li>c. Loaded the hop set using MX-18290 (ICOM only).</li> <li>d. Loaded the TEK using KYK-13.</li> <li>e. Loaded the FH sync-time according to the SOI/SSI.</li> <li>f. Loaded the cue frequency.</li> <li>g. Directed the alternate NCS to load the cue frequency, as required.</li> <li>h. Changed the net identification according to the SOI/SSI.</li> </ul> <p>5. The NCS opens the net.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Issued the net call in the secure mode on the MAN channel.</li> <li>b. Issued and sent the electronic countercountermeasures [ECCM] electronic remote fill (ERF) instructions.</li> <li>c. Set the channel switch to the hop set channel and issued the net call.</li> <li>d. Opened the net.</li> <li>e. Reset the channel switch to MAN and called the missing net members.</li> <li>f. Repeated the cold start.</li> <li>g. Set the FCTN switch to SQ ON.</li> </ul> <p>6. Net members enter the net.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Responded in the correct sequence to the net call.</li> <li>b. Stored the ERF, set the channel switch to the hop set channel, reset the channel switch to MAN, and set the FCTN switch to SQ ON.</li> <li>c. Responded in sequence to the NCS call.</li> <li>d. Reset the channel switch to MAN and the FCTN switch to LO if the member missed the ERF or heard no communications on the hop set channel.</li> <li>e. Responded in sequence to the NCS call.</li> </ul> <p>7. Net members perform the late net entry (LNE), cue, and ERF method.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed pre-mission checks for an FH cold start.</li> <li>b. Loaded the cue frequency according to the SOI/SSI.</li> <li>c. Initiated the cue call.</li> <li>d. Reported into the net.</li> <li>e. Switched to the MAN channel and conducted the cold-start net opening.</li> </ul> <p>8. Net members use proper radio procedures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Kept the length and the number of transmissions to a minimum.</li> <li>b. Used the lowest power setting required to communicate.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Used authorized call signs and frequencies.  d. Observed periods of radio-listening silence.  e. Operated on a random schedule.  f. Adhered to net discipline.</p> <p>9. Team members recognize different types of interference.  a. Checked the RT signal (SIG) display when it was not transmitting.  <b>NOTE: If the display was constantly or intermittently higher than 1, then the members disconnected the antenna to determine if the interference was internal or external.</b>  b. Initiated the ECCM for external symptoms.</p> <p>10. Team members initiate ECCM actions.  a. Continued to operate.  b. Did not disclose the effectiveness of the jamming in the clear.  c. Reduced the transmission speed.  d. Increased the transmitter power.  e. Relocated the antenna.  f. Prepared and forwarded a meaconing, intrusion, jamming, and interference (MIJI) feeder report to the supervisor in the United States message text format (USMTF).</p> <p>11. Team members extend the range of the radio station.  a. Inspected the OE-254 for serviceability.  b. Installed the OE-254 antenna using the team method.  c. Accomplished the transaction from the whip antenna to the OE-254 without unnecessary interruption of service.</p> <p>12. The retransmission team establishes a retransmission site.  a. Installed and connected the OE-254 antennas.  b. Performed preoperational PMCS.  c. Loaded the CMD NET MAN frequency in radio C.  d. Loaded the CMD NET MAN and cue frequencies in radio D.  e. Loaded the TSK and the TEK into both radios (non-ICOM only).  f. Loaded the hop set and the TEK into both radios (ICOM only).  g. Cued the LNE using radio D.  h. Stored the ERF into both radios.  i. Changed radio D to RTS MAN and cue frequencies and TRS net ID.  j. Set the FCTN switches of radios C and D to RXMT.</p> <p>13. Team members initiate the net radio interface (NRI) call.  a. Called the NRI operator on the NRI hop set channel, or initiated a cue call on the net control interface (NCI) cue channel, as required.  b. Switched to NRI MAN channel.  c. Established communications on the NRI hop set channel.  d. Identified the telephone subscriber by call sign or telephone number.</p> <p>14. Team members maintain the SINCGARS radio net.  a. Performed PMCS, as required.  b. Performed fault isolation, as required.  c. Performed user-level maintenance, as required.  d. Evacuated the faulty equipment, as required.  e. Completed the necessary entries in the maintenance record.  f. Reported all uncorrected deficiencies to the immediate supervisor.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
15. The NCS closes the net. a. Called the net and issued closedown instructions. b. Acknowledged the net members. c. Received acknowledgement in the correct sequence. d. Performed after-operation PMCS.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-3-5230	Perform Preventive Maintenance on Building Systems

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Company Headquarters Section

**TASK:** Maintain Company Strength (12-2-0321.05-T01A)  
 (FM 12-6) (DA FORM 1155) (DA FORM 1156)  
 (FM 5-0)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The company has resumed combat operations. Casualties have occurred and replacements are arriving. During operations, the unit may encounter separate or multiple air; Level I threat; nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC); and terrorist attacks. Casualty processing and replacement actions continue during lulls in combat operations. The task may occur in a field environment or during military operations on urbanized terrain (MOUT). A tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) is available. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The personnel situation report (SITREP), which accounts for all company personnel, is reported daily or as required. Digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means to update the common operational picture (COP) and situational awareness (SA). The time required to perform this task is increased when performing it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The headquarters (HQ) element collects strength information reports from subordinate sections.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Logged the SITREP and other personnel information.</li> <li>b. Verified strength data.</li> <li>c. Corrected erroneous and incomplete data.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. The HQ element processes information.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Consolidated the personnel information of subordinate elements.</li> <li>b. Determined critical shortages and cross-leveling requirements.</li> <li>c. Updated the battle roster.</li> <li>d. Prepared a hasty personnel status report (PSR) and strength reports.</li> <li>e. Submitted PSR to higher HQ according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. The HQ element processes replacements.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Briefed replacements on the mission, tactical situation, company policies and procedures, specific duties, and site or company orientation.</li> <li>b. Added Soldiers' names to the battle roster.</li> <li>c. Inspected critical clothing and equipment for shortages.</li> <li>d. Coordinated the issue of needed items.</li> <li>e. Arranged the movement of replacements to the platoon of assignment.</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 4. The first sergeant (1SG) disseminates strength information.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Briefed the commander on unit strength and replacement status.</li> <li>b. Forwarded the personnel SITREP or hasty strength reports and Department of the Army (DA) Forms 1155 (Witness Statement on Individual) and 1156 (Casualty Feeder Report) to the supporting Adjutant (U.S. Army) (S1) section.</li> <li>c. Informed subordinate sections of projected replacements.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 5. The company commander performs strength management functions. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Directed cross leveling.</li> <li>b. Verified combat critical personnel requirements.</li> <li>c. Reviewed strength management reports.</li> <li>d. Spot-checked strength information processing.</li> <li>e. Briefed superiors on unit strength and replacement status.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Company Headquarters Section  
 Company

**TASK:** Maintain Troop Morale and Combat Capability (12-2-0338.05-T01A)  
 (FM 22-51) (AR 27-1) (AR 600-15)  
 (AR 608-99) (FM 21-20) (FM 6-22.5)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The company is preparing to resume combat operations. During preparations, the unit may encounter separate or multiple air; Level 1 threat; nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC); and terrorist attacks. Preparations occur during lulls in combat operations. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. The task may occur in a field environment or during military operations on urbanized terrain (MOUT). The tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) is available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company follows and applies techniques to counter performance degradation and to enhance combat effectiveness. Digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means to maintain and inform subordinate units of the common operational picture (COP) and maintain situational awareness (SA). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The company commander executes actions to keep Soldiers informed.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Issued warning orders, operation orders (OPORDs), and fragmentary orders (FRAGOs) to the lowest possible level.</li> <li>b. Provided Soldiers with an accurate assessment of the friendly and enemy situations.</li> <li>c. Instructed the Soldiers of the leaders' intentions.</li> <li>d. Spoke positively concerning unit mission, purpose, and abilities.</li> <li>e. Encouraged a positive attitude throughout the unit.</li> <li>f. Reduced and prevented rumors.</li> <li>g. Disseminated command information to include the availability of religious support.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The company commander or first sergeant (1SG) implements the unit sleep plan.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Developed the unit sleep plan.</li> <li>b. Provided safe, secure areas away from vehicles and other activities for sleep.</li> <li>c. Provided an opportunity for the maximum number of Soldiers to sleep or rest where possible.</li> <li>d. Specified and provided time for leaders to sleep or rest.</li> <li>e. Adjusted the plan to the tactical situation.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. All leaders implement task rotation restructuring procedures.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Cross-trained Soldiers on critical tasks.</li> <li>b. Developed plans for the rotation of Soldiers between demanding and nondemanding tasks.</li> <li>c. Assigned two Soldiers to function independently on tasks requiring a high degree of accuracy, such as mathematical computations (duplicate efforts).</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 4. All leaders implement stress-coping and stress management techniques.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Taught Soldiers relaxation techniques before deployment.</li> <li>b. Ensured that the unit implemented a buddy system to observe signs of stress or battle fatigue among Soldiers and leaders.</li> <li>c. Ensured that Soldiers used relaxation techniques when needed.</li> <li>d. Facilitated the acceptance of newly arrived Soldiers into the unit.</li> <li>e. Reintegrated returned-to-duty, stressed, or battle-fatigued Soldiers into the unit.</li> </ul> </li>   <li>* 5. The company commander or 1SG implements stress treatment techniques.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Developed a plan to deal with mild and more serious stress or battle fatigue cases.</li> <li>b. Assigned Soldiers, who showed signs of stress or battle fatigue, to perform simpler tasks.</li> <li>c. Ensured that Soldiers were supportive in speech and behavior toward Soldiers suffering from stress or battle fatigue.</li> <li>d. Moved stressed or battle-fatigued Soldiers who did not show improvement after resting to unit trains, supporting units, or medical facilities.</li> <li>e. Referred Soldiers who had serious signs of stress or battle fatigue and those who were not recuperating for medical care.</li> </ul> </li>   <li>* 6. The company command group provides morale, welfare, and recreation (MWR) support.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Implemented sports programs as the situation allowed.</li> <li>b. Provided hot rations.</li> <li>c. Coordinated postal support.</li> <li>d. Coordinated combat payments.</li> <li>e. Coordinated clothing exchange and bath support.</li> <li>f. Coordinated the issue and sale of Soldier comfort, morale, and welfare items.</li> <li>g. Coordinated legal support.</li> <li>h. Advised higher headquarters on the unit MWR status.</li> </ul> </li>   <li>* 7. All leaders maintain Soldiers' fitness.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Monitored Soldiers' fitness.</li> <li>b. Conducted physical training (as the time and combat situation allowed).</li> <li>c. Implemented personal hygiene and field sanitation procedures.</li> <li>d. Corrected problem areas.</li> <li>e. Briefed the commander on the Soldiers' fitness status.</li> </ul> </li>   <li>* 8. The company commander administers the Uniform Code of Military Justice (UCMJ).               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Evaluated evidence and determined the appropriate disposition of reported violations of the UCMJ.</li> <li>b. Administered nonjudicial punishment.</li> <li>c. Forwarded charges for trial by court-martial.</li> </ul> </li>   <li>* 9. The company commander disposes of disciplinary infractions and misconduct by other-than-judicial or nonjudicial proceedings.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Counseled Soldiers for indebtedness.</li> <li>b. Counseled Soldiers for nonsupport of dependents.</li> <li>c. Initiated letters of reprimand or admonition.</li> <li>d. Initiated administrative separations.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		



TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)
08-2-R303.05-T01A	Conduct Battlefield Stress Reduction and Stress Prevention Procedures

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**This page is intentionally left blank.**

## CHAPTER 6

### External Evaluation

6-1. General. An external evaluation is used to assess the ability of the unit to perform its mission. Units may modify this evaluation based on the METT-TC and other considerations as deemed appropriate by the commander. Selected T&EOs from Chapter 5 that involve the total unit and employ a realistic OPFOR and the MILES are used for the evaluation. At the completion of the evaluation, the commander can identify the unit strengths and weaknesses. These strengths and weaknesses are the basis for future training and resource allocations.

6-2. Preparing the Evaluation. The commander must standardize evaluation procedures to accurately measure the unit capabilities. Table 6-1 is a sample evaluation scenario. Evaluation scenarios contain the appropriate tasks necessary to develop and execute the evaluation. Figure 4-1 is a graphic representation of the scenario. Selective tailoring is required because it is not possible to evaluate every task. Procedures for developing the evaluation are discussed below.

**Table 6-1. Sample Evaluation Scenario**

Event	Action	Proposed Time Frame	Estimated Time Allotted
1	Conduct Preevaluation Operations	Before start time	
2	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures		
3	Issue a Road March Order	Day 1 - 0200 hours	2 hours
4	Conduct a Tactical Road March	0400 hours	5 hours
5	Occupy an AA	0900 hours	3 hours
<b>Module 1</b>			
6	Receive a WARNO	1200 hours	2 hours
7	Support Combat Operations (Mobility)		
8	Conduct Unit Support Operations		
9	Perform Unit Maintenance Operations		
10	Conduct Administrative Operations		
11	Conduct Intelligence Operations		
<b>Module 2</b>			
12	Conduct Unit Support Operations	Day 2 - 1400 hours	
13	Receive a WARNO		
14	Support Combat Operations (Countermobility)		
15	Perform Unit Maintenance Operations		
16	Move to an AAR Site and Conduct an AAR		
17	ENDEX		

- a. Identify the missions for evaluating each element from Figure 2-2. Record the selected missions on DA Form 7506 (Unit Proficiency/Evaluation Worksheet).
- b. List each mission on a separate DA Form 7502 (Task Summary Sheet).
- c. Select the tasks for the evaluation of every mission. List the selected tasks on the task summary sheet, which is used for recording the results of the evaluation.

d. Compile the selected tasks in the order that they logically occur in the detailed scenario as shown in the sample in Table 6-1. Group the selected tasks into parts for continuous operations. The parts can be interrupted at logical points to assess the MILES casualties and to conduct in-process AARs.

6-3. Resourcing and Planning. Adequate training ammunition, equipment, and supplies must be forecasted and requisitioned. Table 4-3 is a consolidated list of the support requirements for this sample evaluation. It is based on experience with the scenario in Table 6-1. The evaluating HQ must prepare its own consolidated support requirements.

6-4. Selecting and Training Observers/Controllers. A successful evaluation depends heavily on selecting O/Cs with the proper experience, training them to fulfill their responsibilities, and supervising them throughout the evaluation.

a. A six-person O/C team comprised of the following personnel is suggested for performing an external evaluation:

- (1) Senior O/C.
- (2) Staff O/C.
- (3) Operations O/C.
- (4) Administration O/C.
- (5) Logistics O/C.
- (6) NBC O/C.

b. The O/Cs must have a thorough knowledge of the unit mission, organization, equipment, and doctrine. They must understand the overall operation of the unit and how it is integrated into and supports force protection operations. Team members must have a working knowledge of the common individual and collective tasks in areas such as local-defense convoy procedures, communications, and NBC operations. One member of the team must have detailed expertise in NBC and local-defense, common-task areas. The O/Cs should be equal in grade to the Soldier in charge of the element they are evaluating and should have previous experience in the position being evaluated. All team members must be able to make objective evaluations, function effectively as team members, and state their findings in reports and briefings.

c. O/C training focuses on providing O/Cs with a general understanding of the overall evaluation (providing each O/C with a detailed understanding of the specific duties and responsibilities) and building a spirit of teamwork. O/C training includes—

- (1) The overall evaluation design, general scenario, master events list, and the specific evaluation purposes and objectives.
- (2) The unit METL and its linkage to the T&EOs and other materials contained in this MTP.
- (3) The O/C team composition and general duties and responsibilities of each team member.

(4) The detailed responsibilities of individual team members, with special emphasis on the master events list items that are their responsibility. These include—

- (a) A review of written instructions and materials contained in O/C folders.
- (b) A detailed reconnaissance of the area used for the evaluation.
- (c) The O/C communications and command and control (C2) systems.
- (d) Safety procedures.
- (e) Evaluation data collection OPLAN and procedures.
- (f) AAR procedures and techniques.

(5) A talk-through of the entire evaluation. This includes war-gaming all items on the master events list in order of occurrence and reviewing each team member's responsibilities and anticipated problems.

d. The senior O/C supervises the operation of the team. He provides the team leadership, focuses his efforts on ensuring that the O/Cs fulfill their responsibilities and adhere to the evaluation plan, resolves problems, synchronizes the efforts of the team members, ensures close coordination among team members, holds periodic team coordination meetings, plans and orchestrates the unit AAR, and conducts specific evaluation team AARs.

6-5. Selecting and Training Opposing Forces. The OPFOR support for an external evaluation of the unit is limited to two squads of dismounted infantry and two to five individuals who serve as enemy agents. Although OPFOR support is only used for some tasks, proper training and employment of this force is important to ensure a proper assessment of the unit capabilities.

a. The OPFOR commander should be a company grade officer or a senior noncommissioned officer (NCO) who is well-trained in OPFOR tactics and operations. In addition to the duties and responsibilities in leading various OPFOR elements, the OPFOR commander serves as a part-time member of the O/C team. In order to fulfill O/C responsibilities, the OPFOR commander must participate in O/C planning and training activities and must be present during AARs.

b. OPFOR elements are trained, organized, and equipped to operate in a manner that depicts threat forces as realistically as possible. The training includes—

- (1) Threat tactics and rules of engagement.
- (2) OPFOR missions and responsibilities.
- (3) OPFOR tasks and standards.
- (4) Threat weapons and equipment, if available.
- (5) C2.
- (6) Safety.

6-6. Conducting the Evaluation. The senior O/C has overall responsibility for conducting the evaluation. He orchestrates the overall evaluation and the support provided by various individuals and elements that are specially selected and trained to fulfill designated functions and responsibilities. O/Cs must be free to observe, report, and record the actions of the unit.

a. The HQ two echelons above the unit being evaluated should select and train the control element for the evaluation. It issues orders, receives reports, provides feeder information, and controls the OPFOR.

b. All exercise participants and supporting personnel must ensure that every facet of the evaluation is conducted in a safe manner. Personnel observing unsafe conditions must take prompt action to halt them and must advise their superiors of the situation.

6-7. Recording External Evaluation Information. The senior O/C is responsible for implementing the evaluation scoring system. Although the final evaluation is developed by the senior O/C, the full team participates in this process. Their reports reflect the overall ability of the combat engineer unit to accomplish its wartime missions.

a. The evaluation scoring system is based on an evaluation of the unit performance of each mission-essential task and any other collective task contained in the overall evaluation plan. Use the following four steps for the evaluation:

**Step 1.** Identify the MTP T&EOs that correspond to each of the evaluation plan tasks.

**Step 2.** Use T&EO standards to evaluate the unit performances of the tasks. Do this for each evaluation plan task.

**Step 3.** Record on the T&EO a GO for each performance measure performed to standard and a NO-GO for each performance measure not performed to standard.

**Step 4.** Record the overall unit capability to perform the task by using the GO/NO-GO information recorded on each T&EO. Use the following definitions as guidance in making this determination:

- **GO.** The unit successfully accomplished the task or performance measure to standard.
- **NO-GO.** The unit did not accomplish the task or performance measure to standard.

b. Use DA Forms 7503 (Environmental Data Sheet), 7504 (Personnel and Equipment Loss Report, and 7505 (Unit Data Sheet) to collect the evaluation information. These reports assist the team in recording the information concerning the unit capability to perform its wartime mission according to the established standards. This information will assist the senior O/C to determine the final overall unit rating.

(1) DA Form 7503 is used to record information concerning weather and terrain conditions present during the evaluation period.

(2) DA Form 7504 is used to record information concerning the element personnel and equipment losses during OPFOR engagements.

(3) DA Form 7505 is used to record personnel and equipment status.

6-8. Preparing After-Action Reviews. AARs provide direct feedback to unit members by involving them in the diagnosis process and by enabling them to discover for themselves what happened during the evaluation. In this way, participants identify errors and seek solutions that increase the value of the training and reinforce learning.

a. The senior O/C is responsible for the AAR process. He coordinates the entire AAR program from the initial planning of the evaluation through the after-action phases.

b. Key steps in the AAR process are—

(1) **Planning.** Planning for AARs is started in the exercise preparation activities long before the start of the action evaluation. AARs are integrated into the general scenario at logical breakpoints and into the detailed evaluation scenario that is developed subsequently. Qualified O/Cs are selected and trained in the AAR process as part of O/C training. This phase also includes the identification of potential AAR sites and the requisition of equipment and supplies needed to conduct the AAR.

(2) **Preparation.** AAR preparation starts with the beginning of the actual evaluation. In addition to observing the unit performing its critical tasks, this phase includes the review of the training objectives, orders, and doctrine. Final AAR site selection is completed and times and attendance are established. AAR information is gathered from applicable O/Cs and unit personnel. The AAR is organized and rehearsed.

(3) **Conduct.** AARs are conducted at logical breakpoints in the exercise and at the end of the evaluation. When AAR participants have assembled, the AAR begins with the senior O/C introducing the session with a statement of the AAR purpose, the establishment of the AAR ground rules and procedures, and a restatement of the training and evaluation objectives. A successful AAR follows these guidelines:

(a) AARs are not critiques, but are professional discussions of training events.

(b) The senior O/C guides the discussion in a manner to ensure that participants openly discuss the lessons.

(c) Dialogue is encouraged among O/Cs and unit personnel.

(d) All individuals who participated in the evaluation should be present for the AAR. As a minimum, every unit or element that participates in the exercise is represented.

(e) Participants discuss not only what happened, but also why it happened and how it could have been done better.

(f) Participants review the sequence of events associated with hazards and the risk assessment made before the exercise. As a minimum, the review should address hazards that presented themselves (but were not identified) and each incident of fratricide or near fratricide and how it could be avoided in the future.

(g) Events not directly related to major events are not examined.

(h) Participants do not offer self-serving excuses for inappropriate actions.

(i) The AAR end result is that Soldiers and leaders, through discovery learning, gain a better understanding of their individual and collective strengths and weaknesses and become more proficient in training for and performing their critical tasks.

**NOTE: Reference materials for conducting an AAR are Training Circulars (TCs) 25-6 and 25-20 and FM 7-1.**



**APPENDIX A - EXERCISE OPERATION ORDER**

For use of the OPORD, refer to the exercise outlined in Chapter 4 and to Figure A-1.

<b>OPERATION ORDER</b>	
(classification) FOR TRAINING PURPOSES ONLY	
Operation Order _____ 20_____	Copy ___ of ___ copies 25th Engineer Battalion
Task Organization:	
1. SITUATION.	
<p>a. Enemy Forces. Contact with the enemy has been broken. The enemy has withdrawn deep to the rear. It is being reinforced with motorized rifle forces and is preparing to counterattack within 24 hours. The enemy is expected to use nonpersistent nerve agents. Enemy air is expected to be active in the area. The latest INTSUM indicates that the enemy may have a platoon-size combat outpost in the battalion sector. Enemy units occupying the combat outpost are half strength. Counterattacking forces are expected to be full strength.</p>	
<p>b. Friendly Forces. 1st Brigade conducts a passage of lines to seize Objective Richmond. On order, 1st Brigade continues the attack forward of Phase Line (PL) Green.</p>	
<p>(1) Missions of units on left and right flanks, as required.</p>	
<p>(2) Supporting engineer unit missions, as required.</p>	
<p>(3) Supporting fires: 2nd Battalion, 61st Field Artillery is in direct support.</p>	
2. MISSION. The TF conducts a passage of lines and attacks to seize and secure Objective Richmond no later than 090600Z. On order, the TF prepares to continue movement forward of PL Green.	
3. EXECUTION.	
<p>a. Concept of the Operation: See the overlay developed by the trainer in the field.</p>	
<p>(1) Maneuver. TF 1-25 departs AA Red Cloud with two company teams abreast and two teams following. Team A leads on Axis Oak and is the main attack. Team B leads on Axis Pine and is supporting the attack. Teams C and D follow on Axis Oak and Pine respectively. The commander's intent is to gain contact with the enemy and locate and fix the main body of the enemy so that the brigade can conduct envelopments to destroy it. It is necessary to destroy enemy combat outposts. The unit must quickly reorganize and continue movement until the unit finds the main body. The company team that makes initial contact will attempt to fight through and destroy the enemy. If the unit cannot, they will provide a base of fire for maneuver with the remaining TF. The unit will continue movement to PL Green if no contact is gained. The unit will continue movement past PL Green on order.</p>	
<p>(2) Fire support. The priority of fires is to Team A initially and then to the team that is in contact (once contact is made).</p>	

**Figure A-1. Sample OPORD**

(3) Mines, obstacles, and fortifications. Critical checkpoints and identified obstacles are shown on the obstacle overlay.

b. Subunit Missions (as required).

c. Engineer. Priority of support is to the two lead teams. On order, conduct breaching operations in support of the team in contact. Be prepared to support a hasty defense on order.

d. Coordinating Instructions.

(1) Report all enemy contact.

(2) Report all enemy obstacles.

(3) Report crossing of the PLs.

(4) Additional information, as required.

4. SERVICE AND SUPPORT. Per the brigade SOP.

5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL.

a. Command.

b. Signal.

(1) Current SOI.

(2) Radio-listening silence until initial contact is made with the enemy.

FOR TRAINING PURPOSES ONLY  
(classification)

**Figure A-1. Sample OPORD (continued)**

## APPENDIX B - THREAT ANALYSIS

B-1. The U.S. will remain globally engaged in the future, and U.S. forces will be called upon to execute missions across the full spectrum of warfare. This may involve peacekeeping and peace enforcement in stability operations and support operations (SOSO) to small-scale contingencies (SSCs) to major contingency operations (MCOs). In some instances, these operations may be conducted simultaneously and within the same theater of operations. Many crises will start regionally, but due to an increasingly globally interconnected economy and greater access to new, evolutionary and revolutionary technologies could rapidly and unexpectedly expand to much more significant proportions unless they are quickly contained and resolved. To succeed, future U.S. forces will have to face information operations (IO), likely terrorist attacks, sophisticated ambushes, and a threat that strikes in unconventional and unexpected ways. These forces will have to deal with the key and complex variables of the operational environment, must be prepared to address a full spectrum of military threats, and may encounter enemy methods of operation that focus on opportunity and asymmetrical end states.

B-2. The most likely operational environments in which U.S. forces may operate will involve short-notice, early-entry operations against increasingly sophisticated opponents who are studying U.S. operations and adapting. To respond to these threats, U.S. forces will deploy and consist of a campaign-quality, modular force with a joint and expeditionary mind-set that is able to adapt to unforeseen circumstances which will occur in the future. Additionally, the uncertainty as to where U.S. forces will deploy, the probability of a very austere operational environment, and the requirement to fight on arrival throughout the battlespace, pose an entirely different requirement—the fundamental distinction of expeditionary operations.

B-3. These operations may involve more than one country, combatant, or type of combatant. Transnational and nonstate elements, including corporations, terrorist organizations, religious movements, and organized crime, will increasingly complicate U.S. operations. Criminal organizations, drug traffickers, and terrorist groups will expand their global reach, often in cooperation with states and other transnational groups that are seeking to achieve greater effect from their limited capabilities. Emerging cultural, religious, ethnic, political, and economic realities can complicate the future operational environment. Situations will be more unpredictable and extremely fluid, and the range of operational settings more complex.

B-4. U.S. forces may operate in all operational environments and terrain sets—urban becoming more likely. Potential enemies will exploit social, cultural, ethnic, religious, and economic diversities and terrain, weather, and their core capabilities in either a conventional or asymmetric manner to obtain a tactical advantage to offset U.S. technological and range advantages. Operations in complex terrain (difficult movement/maneuver, reduced range/visibility, and ease of threat concealment) and urban environments alter the conventional nature of combat. Even as technology advances, weather will continue to have a significant impact on operations, degrading the ability to employ manned and unmanned air platforms, often for long periods of time. Similarly, Soldiers may have to contend with the effects of high altitudes, cold or hot temperatures, or humidity, all which degrade performance.

B-5. The operational environment will play an increasingly important role in the employment of U.S. forces. This environment will likely encompass complex terrain—deserts, rolling woodlands, jungles, and urban areas comprised of subterranean infrastructure, shantytowns, and skyscraper canyons. The infrastructure in likely areas of conflict will be generally austere, directly affecting U.S. means to respond with military forces or humanitarian aid.

B-6. Communications networks will often be poorly or incompletely developed, medical care will be lacking and disease endemic, and roads and bridges may not support military operations without considerable engineering effort. Additionally, the enemy may use the media in IO against U.S. forces. This may involve attempts at eroding host nation or world public opinion by questioning the effectiveness of U.S. forces deployed in their country. Depending on the effectiveness of the IO, U.S. forces may experience a sway in the host nation opinion in favor of enemy forces.

B-7. U.S. forces can expect to operate in intermixed populations of combatants and noncombatants. While conducting operations within this environment, U.S. forces may be required to prevent harassment attacks against civilian populations and nonplatform assets. Cultural and ethnic fighting may require U.S. forces to prevent attacks on religious sites, government and public buildings, and the host nation petroleum, water, or electrical supply stations.

B-8. Initial operational tempo will be important to the threat to achieve objectives and set conditions for entry denial operations to prevent U.S. forces from establishing a foothold in the region. Once U.S. forces arrive in the area of responsibility (AOR), the threat may seek to prolong the conflict and avoid decisive battle to preserve its military capability. It then may change the nature of the conflict by transitioning its tactical/operational forces while continuing with its strategic offensive actions aimed at such critical intangible factors like the will to fight, public support, and our coalition. This is designed to cause the U.S. to lose the will to continue and to terminate the conflict.

B-9. When U.S. forces attain entrance into the area, most operations against the U.S. will be force-oriented (focused at our universally perceived strategic center of gravity—mass U.S./coalition casualties and the resultant effect on our national resolve). The threat to U.S. forces will include, but are not limited to, small arms and automatic individual/crew-served weapons, antitank (AT) weapons to include AT-guided missiles (ATGMs), medium caliber cannons (20-75 millimeter), handheld high-explosive AT (HEAT) weapons, and landmines. The land mine threat will include conventional AT mines, antipersonnel (AP) landmines, AT/AP scatterable mines, off-route/side-attack mines, top-attack/wide area munitions, improvised explosive devices (IEDs), booby traps, explosive obstacles, and UXO.

B-10. The enemy will conduct well-planned and sophisticated ambushes. Intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance (ISR) and attack structures will be formed to destroy dominant combat systems or to achieve mass casualties—not always linked to maneuver or ground objectives.

B-11. Adversary C2 systems will use a mix of available communication infrastructure, tactical military communications, and off-the-shelf technology. Even with these communication means the adversary will sacrifice some degree of synchronization to conduct dispersed attacks.

B-12. Adversaries will seek cover and concealment in complex terrain and urban environments to offset the U.S. operating advantage of standoff and to negate technological overmatch. Mechanized and armored units will be widely dispersed, forming and conducting dispersed operations as opportunities present themselves or are created. Threat maneuver will occur during periods of reduced exposure to U.S. ISR technologies. Extensive internal and external attacks against IO and systems will be conducted as a component of the threat strategic offensive. There will be significant threat capability upgrades to support camouflage, concealment, and deception at all echelons and throughout all BOSs. Use of commercial, space-based ISR systems by threat forces will support precision targeting and increased situational awareness. The threat will use terrorism to deny sanctuary and disrupt force projection operations.

B-13. Threat nations maintain the capability to conduct more traditional military operations and will do so when an operational advantage is perceived. U.S. forces will rarely face an enemy who is predictably echeloned in depth and attempts defeat with actions based purely on mass and momentum.

B-14. Within the complexities of this environment, adversaries will attempt to force units into rapid and continuous transitions between types of tactical operations to create windows of vulnerability. Noncontiguous enemy actions within the tactical battlespace will force rapid changes in organization for combat. The enemy will be difficult to template as it adapts and attempts to create conditions for which U.S. forces are not properly prepared for either in organization or planning. Battle will be more or less continuous. Future enemies will probably have somewhat less advanced systems; systems that U.S. forces discounted because of range limitations or age. In complex terrain and urban settings, these systems (such as mortars and rocket-propelled grenades [RPGs]) will again find effective uses and become factors to contend with.

B-15. Over the past several decades, antagonist forces have increasingly learned to rely on tactics, techniques, and procedures (TTPs) that circumvent or undermine opponent strengths while exploiting its weaknesses—methods that differ significantly from the expected method of operations. Such an approach, commonly referred to as "asymmetric," not only relies on an appreciation of the adversary vulnerabilities, but also takes into account the full range of the party social, political, and material resources. In particular, an asymmetric approach seeks to exploit the so-called "home-field advantage" by using the indigenous population and its environment against the enemy—hence the term indigenous asymmetric threat. Characteristically, asymmetric combatants will exploit complex terrain, particularly highly populated urban terrain, for concealment and geospatial and political advantage, exploiting the indigenous environment and its inhabitants for surprise, escape routes, and shielding, while also negating a conventionally oriented adversary strength in numbers, equipment, and firepower. Frequently employing innovative, nontraditional procedures and weapons, asymmetric opponents generally seek a major psychological impact, such as shock or confusion, and always look for results disproportionate to the effort invested. Always presume that an indigenous opponent would consistently use the U.S. restrictive rules of engagement against the U.S..

**NOTE: This projected threat environment is based on the Capstone System Threat Assessment Report (STAR) for the Future Combat System (U), dated 24 January 2003. This STAR was approved by HQ, DA on 24 January 2003 and validated by the Defense Intelligence Agency (DIA) on 24 January 2003 and the Future Engineer Force White Paper, Version 1.8, 24 February 2004.**

**This page is intentionally left blank.**

**APPENDIX C - METRIC CONVERSION CHART**

This appendix complies with current Army directives, which state that the metric system will be incorporated into all new publications. Table C-1 is a metric conversion chart.

**Table C-1. Metric Conversion Chart**

<b>U.S. Units</b>	<b>Multiplied By</b>	<b>Equals Metric Units</b>
<b>Length</b>		
Feet	0.30480	Meters
Inches	2.54000	Centimeters
Inches	0.02540	Meters
Inches	25.40010	Millimeters
Miles (statute)	1.60930	Kilometers
Miles per hour	0.04470	Meters per second
Yards	0.91400	Meters
<b>Volume</b>		
Cubic feet	0.02830	Cubic meters
Cubic yards	0.76460	Cubic meters
<b>Weight</b>		
Pounds	453.59000	Grams
Pounds	0.45359	Kilograms
<b>Metric Units</b>	<b>Multiplied By</b>	<b>Equals U.S. Units</b>
<b>Length</b>		
Centimeters	0.39370	Inches
Meters per second	2.23700	Miles per hour
Millimeters	0.03937	Inches
Kilometers	0.62137	Miles (statute)
Meters	3.28080	Feet
Meters	39.37000	Inches
Meters	1.09360	Yards
<b>Volume</b>		
Cubic meters	35.31440	Cubic feet
Cubic meters	1.30790	Cubic yards
<b>Weight</b>		
Kilograms	2.20460	Pounds

**This page is intentionally left blank.**



**GLOSSARY****1SG**

first sergeant

**5 Ss and T**

search, silence, segregate, speed, safeguard, and tag

**AA**

avenue of approach; assembly area; antiaircraft; anchor assembly

**AAR**

after-action review; after-action report

**ABCS**

Army Battle Command System

**ABE**

assistant brigade engineer

**ACE**

ammunition, casualties, and equipment; air combat element (NATO); analysis and control element; aviation combat element (USMC); armored combat earthmover

**ADA**

air defense artillery

**ADC**

area damage control

**AFJI**

Air Force Joint Instruction

**AFJMAN**

Air Force joint manual

**AFJPAM**

Air Force joint pamphlet

**AFPAM**

Air Force pamphlet

**AFTTP**

Air Force technical training publication

**AHD**

antihandling device

**AKO**

Army Knowledge Online

**AN/PSS-12**

hand-held, portable mine-detecting set

**AO**

area of operations

**AOAP**

Army Oil Analysis Program

**AOR**

area of responsibility

**AP**

antipersonnel

**APC**

armored personnel carrier

**AR**

Army regulation; armor; angle of repose

**ARTEP**

Army Training and Evaluation Program

**ASAS**

All-Source Analysis System

**AT**

antiterrorism; antitank

**ATGM**

antitank guided missile

**ATTN**

attention

**ATWESS**

antitank weapon effects signature simulator; Antitank Weapon Effects Simulator System

**BASIC**

body armor set, individual countermine

**BCT**

basic combat training; brigade combat team; battle coordination team

**BDAR**

battle damage assessment and repair

**BF**

battle fatigue; board feet

**BMO**

battalion maintenance officer

**BOM**

bill of materials

**BOS**

battlefield operating system

<b>BP</b>	battle position; building pedestal (single story only); baseplate (single story and double story)
<b>C2</b>	command and control
<b>CAS</b>	casualty; close air support
<b>CATS</b>	combined arms training strategy
<b>CCIR</b>	commander's critical-information requirement
<b>CCT</b>	combat-control team
<b>CDM</b>	chemical downwind message
<b>CFX</b>	command field exercise
<b>CFZ</b>	critical friendly zone
<b>CH</b>	chaplains; combat heavy; cargo helicopter
<b>CHS</b>	combat health support
<b>COA</b>	course of action
<b>COMDTINST</b>	Commandant, United States Coast Guard Instruction
<b>COMEX</b>	communications exercise
<b>COMSEC</b>	communications security
<b>CONEX</b>	container express
<b>COP</b>	common operational picture
<b>CP</b>	command post; checkpoint
<b>CPX</b>	command post exercise

- CS**  
combat support; Costa Rica; o-chlorobenzylidene malononitrile
- CSS**  
combat service support
- DA**  
Department of the Army; Denmark; direct action
- DD**  
Department of Defense
- DEUCE**  
deployable universal combat earthmover
- DIA**  
Defense Intelligence Agency; diameter
- DODIC**  
Department of Defense identification code
- DRS**  
direct religious support; Digital Reconnaissance System
- DST**  
decision support template; Driver Skills Trainer
- DTSS**  
Digital Topographic Support System
- DZ**  
drop zone
- DZST**  
drop zone support team
- EA**  
each; engagement area; environmental assessment
- EBA**  
engineer battlefield assessment
- ECCM**  
electronic countercountermeasures
- ECM**  
electronic countermeasures
- EEFI**  
essential elements of friendly information
- EI**  
essential elements of information

- EGA**  
extended graphics adapter; electronically-generated form
- EMST**  
essential mobility-survivability tasks
- ENDEX**  
end of exercise
- EOD**  
explosive ordnance disposal
- EPM**  
external power module; electronic protection measures; electronic protection measure
- EPW**  
enemy prisoner of war
- ERF**  
electronic remote fill; electronic countercountermeasures (ECCM) remote fill
- ERP**  
engineer regulating point; effective radiated power; emitter receiver processor; en route reporting points; end-route rally point; enhanced radiation projectile
- EW**  
electronic warfare
- FBCB2**  
Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below
- FEC**  
fires and effects coordinator
- FFIR**  
friendly force information requirements
- FH**  
field hospital; frequency hopping
- FM**  
field manual; frequency modulated; frequency modulation
- FMFM**  
fleet Marine force manual
- FMFRP**  
fleet Marine Forces reference publication
- FO**  
forward observer
- FPF**  
final protective fire; final protection fires

**FPL**

final protective line

**FRAGO**

fragmentary order

**FS**

fire support; foresight; Fort Sill

**FSO**

fire support officer; food service officer

**FST**

field sanitation team; fire support team

**FTX**

field training exercise

**G2**

Assistant Chief of Staff, G2 (Intelligence)

**G3**

Assistant Chief of Staff, G3 (Operations and Plans)

**GPM**

gallons per minute

**GRREG**

graves registration

**HEAT**

high-explosive antitank

**HMEE**

high-mobility engineer excavator

**HN**

host nation

**HQ**

headquarters

**HSC**

Health Services Command; headquarters and support company; high-speed compactor

**IAW**

in accordance with

**ICOM**

imbedded communications; Intercommunications System; integrated communications security

**IED**

imitative electronic deception; improvised explosive device

**incl**

inclosure; including

**INTREP**

intelligence report

**INTSUM**

intelligence summary

**IO**

information objectives; information operations; intelligence oversight; international organization

**IPB**

intelligence preparation of the battlefield; intelligence preparation of the battlespace

**IR**

infrared; intelligence requirements

**ISR**

Individual School Requirement; Individual Soldier's Record; intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance

**KIA**

killed in action

**kW**

kilowatt

**LCE**

load-carrying equipment

**LNE**

late net entry

**LOGPAC**

logistics package; logistical package

**LOGSTAT**

logistics statistical; logistics status; logistical status

**LRA**

local reproduction authorized

**LRP**

logistics release point; land roller pedestal (used to receive launch nose in DS construction)

**LZ**

landing zone

**M4T6**

a type of standard, hand-assembled military bridge.

**man**

manual

**MANSCEN**

Maneuver Support Center

**MAPEX**

map exercise

**MCO**

movement-control office; major contingency operations

**MCRP**

Marine Corps reference publication

**MCS**

Maneuver Control System

**MCSR**

materiel condition status report

**MCWP**

Marine Corp Warfighting Publication

**MDI**

modernized demolition initiator

**MDMP**

military decision-making process

**mech**

mechanized

**MEDEVAC**

medical evacuation

**MEP**

mobile electric power

**METL**

mission-essential task list

**METT-TC**

mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations

**MHE**

materials-handling equipment

**MICLIC**

mine-clearing line charge

**MIJI**

meaconing, intrusion, jamming, and interference

**MILES**

Multiple Integrated Laser Engagement System

**MLC**

military load classification; military load class

**mm**

millimeter(s)



**MO**

Missouri; monthly

**MOPP**

mission-oriented protective posture

**MOPP2**

mission-oriented protective posture Level 2 (mask carried/worn, protective suit and boots worn, and gloves carried)

**MOPP4**

mission-oriented protective posture Level 4 (mask, protective suit, boots, and gloves worn)

**MORTREP**

mortar bombing report

**MOS**

military occupational specialty; minimum operating strip

**MOUT**

military operations on urbanized terrain

**MP**

military police

**MRC**

major regional conflict/contingency; motorized rifle company

**MRE**

meal, ready to eat; meal, ready-to-eat

**MRL**

multiple rocket launcher

**MSD**

minimum safe distance; movement support detachment

**MSR**

main supply route

**MSRT**

mobile subscriber radiotelephone terminal

**MTF**

medical-treatment facility

**MTP**

mission training plan; MOS training plan

**MWR**

morale, welfare, and recreation

**NBC**

nuclear, biological, and chemical

**NCI**

net control interface

**NCO**

noncommissioned officer

**NCOIC**

noncommissioned officer in charge

**NCS**

net control station

**NLT**

not later than

**NMC**

nonmission capable

**NMCS**

nonmission capable supply

**No.**

number

**non-ICOM**

nonintegrated communications security

**NRI**

net radio interface

**NSN**

national stock number; nonstandard number

**NTRP**

Navy Tactical Reference Publication

**NTTP**

Navy Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures

**NWP**

Navel warfare publication

**O/C**

observer/controller

**OAKOC**

observation and fields of fire, avenues of approach, key terrain, obstacles and movement, and cover and concealment

**OBJ**

objective

**OBM**

outboard motor

**OBSDOC**

obstacle document

**OEG**

operation exposure guide; operational-exposure guidance

**OH**

observation helicopter; overhang

**OIC**

officer in charge

**OP**

observation post; operational procedure

**OPFOR**

opposing forces

**OPLAN**

operation plan

**OPNAVINST**

Chief of Naval Operations Instruction

**OPORD**

operation order

**OPSEC**

operations security

**ORP**

objective rally point; electronic protection measures

**P**

needs practice; pass; passed; barometric pressure; mean radius of curvature

**pam**

pamphlet

**PCC**

precombat check

**PCI**

photo coverage indexes; precombat inspection

**PDDE**

power-driven decontamination equipment

**PIR**

priority intelligence requirements

**PL**

phase line; plastic limit; Poland

**PLL**

prescribed load list

**PLS**

preservative lubricating oil-special; Palletized Load System

**PMCS**

preventive-maintenance checks and services

**POL**

petroleum, oils, and lubricants

**POS/NAV**

position/navigation

**PSG**

platoon sergeant

**PSR**

personnel status report

**PVNTMED**

preventive medicine

**PZ**

pickup zone

**R&S**

reconnaissance and security; reconnaissance and surveillance

**RATELO**

radiotelephone operator

**RC**

rapid cure; Reserve Component

**RES**

radiation exposure status

**RFL**

restrictive-fire line

**ROE**

rules of engagement

**ROI**

rules of interaction

**RP**

Republic of Philippines; release point; rally point; reference point; red phosphorus

**RPG**

rocket-propelled grenade

**RT**

radius of target; receiver/transmitter

**RXMT**

retransmit

**S1**

Adjutant (U.S. Army)

**S2**

Intelligence Officer (U.S. Army)

**S3**

Operations and Training Officer (U.S. Army)

**S4**

Supply Officer (U.S. Army)

**SA**

semiannually; situational awareness

**SANDI**

stop, assess, note, draw back, and inform

**SATRAN**

satellite transmission

**SAW**

squad automatic weapon

**SB**

supply bulletin; switchboard

**SC**

Signal Corps; single channel; slow set; supply catalog; slow cure

**SCATMINE**

scatterable mine

**SCPE**

simplified collective-protection equipment

**SEE**

small-emplacement excavator

**SHELREP**

shelling report

**SHORAD**

shore-range air defense

**SHTU**

simplified handheld terminal unit

**SIG**

signal

**SINCGARS**

Single-Channel, Ground and Airborne Radio System

**SITREP**

situation report

**SM**

Soldier's manual

**SOEO**

scheme of engineer operations

**SOFA**

Status of Forces Agreement

**SOI**

signal operation instructions

**SOP**

standing operating procedure

**SOSO**

stability operations and support operations

**SP**

start point; strongpoint; self-propelled; Spain

**SPOTREP**

spot report

**SSC**

small scale contingency; surveillance support center

**SSI**

standing signal instructions; signal supplemental instructions

**STANAG**

standardization agreement

**STAR**

scheduled theater airlift route; sensitive target approval and review; standard attribute reference; standard terminal arrival route; surface-to-air recovery; system threat assessment report

**STB**

supertropical bleach

**STP**

Soldier training publication

**STRAC**

Standards in Training Commission

**STX**

situational training exercise

**T**

trained; slab thickness; deck thickness; crown thickness; geodetic azimuth; grid azimuth; slope distance; telescope above station; time; tracked

**T&EO**

training and evaluation outline

**TACAIR**

tactical air

**TACSOP**

tactical standing operating procedure

**TAMMS**

The Army Maintenance Management System

**TC**

technical coordinator; training circular; track commander; tank commander

**TEK**

traffic encryption key

**TEWT**

tactical exercise without troops

**TF**

task force; total float

**TLP**

troop-leading procedures

**TM**

team; technical manual; trademark

**TNT**

trinitrotoluene

**TO**

theater of operations; technical order

**TOC**

tactical operations center

**TOE**

table(s) of organization and equipment

**TPH**

tons per hour; trips per hour

**TRADOC**

United States Army Training and Doctrine Command

**TRP**

target reference point; traffic regulation plan

**TSEC**

transmission security

**TSK**

transmission security key

**TSOP**

tactical standing operating procedure

**TTP**

tactics, techniques, and procedures

**U**

unclassified; up; untrained; unlocked

**UAV**

unmanned aerial vehicle

**UCMJ**

Uniform Code of Military Justice

**UH**

utility helicopter

**UMCP**

unit maintenance collection point

**U.S.**

United States

**USMTF**

United States message text format

**UXO**

unexploded ordnance

**Vol**

Volume

**w/**

with

**WARNO**

warning order

**WCS**

weapon control status; weapon control station

**WO**

warrant officer; warning order

**XO**

executive officer



## REFERENCES

### Required Publications

Required publications are sources that users must read in order to understand or to comply with this publication.

#### Army Regulations

AR 190-8	Enemy Prisoners of War, Retained Personnel, Civilian Internees, and Other Detainees OPNAVINST 3461.6; AFJI 31-304; MCO 3461.1. 1 October 1997
AR 200-1	Environmental Protection and Enhancement. 21 February 1997
AR 220-1	Unit Status Reporting. 10 June 2003
AR 27-1	Legal Services, Judge Advocate Legal Services (Reprinted w/Basic Incl C1). 30 September 1996
AR 30-22	The Army Food Program. 30 August 2002
AR 380-5	Department of the Army Information Security Program. 29 September 2000
AR 385-10	The Army Safety Program. 29 February 2000
AR 385-40	Accident Reporting and Records. 1 November 1994
AR 40-5	Preventive Medicine. 15 October 1990
AR 530-1	Operations Security (OPSEC). 3 March 1995
AR 600-15	Indebtedness of Military Personnel. 14 March 1986
AR 608-99	Family Support, Child Custody, and Paternity. 29 October 2003
AR 700-138	Army Logistics Readiness and Sustainability. 26 February 2004
AR 710-2	Inventory Management Supply Policy Below the National Level. 25 February 2004
AR 725-50	Requisition, Receipt, and Issue System. 15 November 1995
AR 750-1	Army Materiel Maintenance Policy. 18 August 2003
AR 750-43	Army Test, Measurement and Diagnostic Equipment Program. 14 December 2004

#### Army Training and Evaluation Program

ARTEP 5-025-66-MTP	Mission Training Plan for the Engineer Battalion, Airborne Division. 2 October 2000
ARTEP 5-027-10-MTP	Mission Training Plan for the Engineer Platoon, Engineer Company, Engineer Battalion, (Light). 2 October 2000
ARTEP 5-436-34-MTP	Mission Training Plan for the Headquarters and Headquarters Company, Engineer Combat Battalion, Corps. 21 August 2003
ARTEP 5-DRILL	Engineer Drills. 29 November 2004
ARTEP 7-8-DRILL	Battle Drills for the Infantry Rifle Platoon and Squad. 25 June 2002

#### Department of Army Forms

DA FORM 1155	Witness Statement on Individual.
DA FORM 1156	Casualty Feeder Report.
DA FORM 1248	Road Reconnaissance Report.
DA FORM 1355	Minefield Record.
DA FORM 1355-1-R	Hasty Protective Row Minefield Record (LRA).
DA FORM 2028	Recommended Changes to Publications and Blank Forms.

DA FORM 2404	Equipment Inspection and Maintenance Worksheet.
DA FORM 2406	Materiel Condition Status Report.
DA FORM 5517-R	Standard Range Cards (LRA).
DA FORM 5913	Strength and Feeder Report.
DA FORM 5988-E	Equipment Inspection Maintenance Worksheet (EGA).
DA FORM 7502	Task Summary Sheet.
DA FORM 7503	Environmental Data Sheet.
DA FORM 7504	Personnel and Equipment Loss Report.
DA FORM 7505	Unit Data Sheet.
DA FORM 7506	Unit Proficiency/Evaluation Worksheet.
DA FORM 7507	ARTEP Mission Training Plan User Feedback.

### **Department of Army Pamphlets**

DA PAM 710-2-1	Using Unit Supply System (Manual Procedures). 31 December 1997
DA PAM 738-750	Functional Users Manual for the Army Maintenance Management System (TAMMS). 1 August 1994

### **Department of Defense Forms**

DD FORM 2745	Enemy Prisoner of War (EPW) Capture Tag.
--------------	--

### **Field Manuals**

FM 101-5-2	U.S. Army Report and Message Formats. 29 June 1999
FM 1-02	Operational Terms and Graphics MCRP 5-12A. 21 September 2004
FM 10-23	Basic Doctrine for Army Field Feeding and Class I Operations Management. 18 April 1996
FM 10-27-1	Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Quartermaster General Support Supply Operations. 20 April 1993
FM 10-27-2	Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Quartermaster Direct Support Supply and Field Service Operations. 18 June 1991
FM 10-450-3	Multiservice Helicopter Sling Load: Basic Operations and Equipment MCRP 4-23E, VOL 1; NWP 3-04.11; AFJMAN 11-223, VOL 1; COMDTINST M13482.2A. 10 April 1997
FM 10-450-4	Multiservice Helicopter Sling Load: Single-Point Load Rigging Procedures AFJMAN 11-223, VOL II; COMDTINST M13482.3A; MCRP 4-23E, VOL II; NWP 3-04.12. 30 May 1998
FM 10-450-5	Multiservice Helicopter Sling Load: Dual-Point Rigging Procedures MCRP 4-23E, VOL III; NWP 3-04.13; AFJMAN 11-223, VOL III; COMDTINST M13482.4A. 30 August 1999
FM 10-64	Mortuary Affairs Operations. 16 February 1999
FM 10-67-1	Concepts and Equipment of Petroleum Operations. 2 April 1998
FM 1-100	Army Aviation Operations. 21 February 1997
FM 12-6	Personnel Doctrine. 9 September 1994
FM 20-3	Camouflage, Concealment, and Decoys. 30 August 1999
FM 20-32	Mine/Countermine Operations. 29 May 1998
FM 21-10	Field Hygiene and Sanitation. 21 June 2000
FM 21-16	Unexploded Ordnance (UXO) Procedures FMFM 13-8-1. 30 August 1994
FM 21-20	Physical Fitness Training. 30 September 1992
FM 21-75	Combat Skills of the Soldier. 3 August 1984
FM 22-51	Leaders' Manual for Combat Stress Control. 29 September 1994

FM 24-1 Signal Support in the Airland Battle. 15 October 1990  
 FM 24-18 Tactical Single-Channel Radio Communications Techniques.  
 30 September 1987  
 FM 24-19 Radio Operator's Handbook. 24 May 1991  
 FM 24-33 Communications Techniques: Electronic Counter-Countermeasures.  
 17 July 1990  
 FM 24-35 Signal Operation Instructions "The SOI." 26 October 1990  
 FM 3-0 Operations. 14 June 2001  
 FM 3-100.4 Environmental Considerations in Military Operations. MCRP 4-11B.  
 15 June 2000  
 FM 3-11 Multiservice Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Nuclear, Biological,  
 and Chemical Defense Operations MCWP 3-37.1; NWP 3-11; AFTTP (I)  
 3-2.42. 10 March 2003  
 FM 3-11.11 Flame, Riot Control Agents and Herbicide Operations. MCRP 3-3.7.2.  
 19 August 1996  
 FM 3-11.19 Multiservice Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Nuclear, Biological,  
 and Chemical Reconnaissance. MWCP 3-37.4; NTTP 3-11.29; AFTTP(1)  
 3-2.44. 30 July 2004  
 FM 3-11.4 Multiservice Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Nuclear, Biological,  
 and Chemical (NBC) Protection. MCWP 3-37.2; NTTP 3-11.27; AFTTP  
 (I) 3-2.46. 2 June 2003  
 FM 3-19.30 Physical Security (Formerly FM 19-30). 8 January 2001  
 FM 3-19.4 Military Police Leaders' Handbook. 4 March 2002  
 FM 3-19.40 Military Police Internment/Resettlement Operations (Formerly FM 19-40).  
 1 August 2001  
 FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon. 2 December 2002  
 FM 3-21.38 Pathfinder Operations. 1 October 2002  
 FM 3-21.71 Mechanized Infantry Platoon and Squad (Bradley). 20 August 2002  
 FM 3-3 Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance FMFM 11-17.  
 16 November 1992  
 FM 3-34 Engineer Operations. 2 January 2004  
 FM 3-34.2 Combined-Arms Breaching Operations. 31 August 2000  
 FM 34-130 Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield. 8 July 1994  
 FM 34-2 Collection Management and Synchronization Planning. 8 March 1994  
 FM 34-2-1 Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Reconnaissance and  
 Surveillance and Intelligence Support to Counterreconnaissance.  
 19 June 1991  
 FM 34-3 Intelligence Analysis. 15 March 1990  
 FM 34-5 Human Intelligence and Related Counterintelligence Operations.  
 29 July 1994  
 FM 34-60 Counterintelligence. 3 October 1995  
 FM 3-5 NBC Decontamination MCWP 3-37.3. 28 July 2000  
 FM 3-50 Smoke Operations. 4 December 1990  
 FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team (Formerly FM 71-1).  
 9 December 2002  
 FM 4-01.41 Army Rail Operations. 12 December 2003  
 FM 4-02 Force Health Protection in a Global Environment. 13 February 2003  
 FM 4-02.6 The Medical Company Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures.  
 1 August 2002

FM 4-20.41	Aerial Delivery Distribution in the Theater of Operations. 29 August 2003
FM 4-25.11	First Aid NTRP 4-02.1.1; AFMAN 44-163(I); MCRP 3-02G. 23 December 2002
FM 4-25.12	Unit Field Sanitation Team (FM 21-10-1). 25 January 2002
FM 4-30.3	Maintenance Operations and Procedures. 28 July 2004
FM 44-100	US Army Air and Missile Defense Operations. 15 June 2000
FM 44-64	SHORAD Battalion and Battery Operations. 5 June 1997
FM 44-8	Combined Arms for the Air Defense. 1 June 1999
FM 44-80	Visual Aircraft Recognition. 30 September 1996
FM 4-93.4	Theater Support Command. 15 April 2003
FM 5-0	Army Planning and Orders Production. 20 January 2005
FM 5-10	Combat Engineer Platoon. 3 October 1995
FM 5-100-15	Corps Engineer Operations. 6 June 1995
FM 5-102	Counter mobility. 14 March 1985
FM 5-103	Survivability. 10 June 1985
FM 5-170	Engineer Reconnaissance. 5 May 1998
FM 5-250	Explosives and Demolitions (Reprinted w/Basic Incl C1). 30 July 1998
FM 5-34	Engineer Field Data. 30 August 1999
FM 5-410	Military Soils Engineering. 23 December 1992
FM 5-415	Fire-Fighting Operations. 9 February 1999
FM 5-422	Engineer Prime Power Operations. 7 May 1993
FM 5-430-00-1	Planning and Design of Roads, Airfields, and Heliports in the Theater of Operations - Road Design AFPAM 32-8013, VOL 1. 26 August 1994
FM 5-430-00-2	Planning and Design of Roads, Airfields, and Heliports in the Theater of Operations - Airfield and Heliport Design AFJPAM 32-8013, VOL II. 29 September 1994
FM 5-436	Paving and Surfacing Operations. 28 April 2000
FM 5-480	Port Construction and Repair. 12 December 1990
FM 55-30	Army Motor Transport Units and Operations. 27 June 1997
FM 5-71-100	Division Engineer Combat Operations. 22 April 1993
FM 5-71-2	Armored Task-Force Engineer Combat Operations. 28 June 1996
FM 5-71-3	Brigade Engineer Combat Operations (Armored) (Reprinted w/Basic Incl C1). 3 October 1995
FM 6-22.5	Combat Stress MCRP 6-11C; NTTP 1-15M. 23 June 2000
FM 63-1	Support Battalions and Squadrons, Separate Brigades and Armored Cavalry Regiment (Reprinted w/Basic Incl C1). 30 September 1993
FM 63-2	Division Support Command, Armored, Infantry, and Mechanized Infantry Divisions. 20 May 1991
FM 63-20	Forward Support Battalion. 26 February 1990
FM 63-21	Main Support Battalion. 7 August 1990
FM 63-3	Corps Support Command. 30 September 1993
FM 7-0	Training the Force. 22 October 2002
FM 7-1	Battle Focused Training. 15 September 2003
FM 7-10	The Infantry Rifle Company. 14 December 1990
FM 7-7	The Mechanized Infantry Platoon and Squad (APC). 15 March 1985
FM 7-8	Infantry Rifle Platoon and Squad. 22 April 1992
FM 7-92	The Infantry Reconnaissance Platoon and Squad (Airborne, Air Assault, Light Infantry). 23 December 1992

FM 8-10-6 Medical Evacuation in a Theater of Operations, Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures. 14 April 2000

FM 8-51 Combat Stress Control in a Theater of Operations Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures. 29 September 1994

FM 90-13 River Crossing Operations MCWP 3-17.1. 26 January 1998

FM 90-4 Air Assault Operations. 16 March 1987

FM 90-7 Combined Arms Obstacle Integration. 29 September 1994

FM 9-43-2 Recovery and Battlefield Damage Assessment and Repair FMFRP 4-34; TO 36-1-181. 3 October 1995

### Other Product Types

STANAG 2036 Land Mine Laying, Marking, Recording and Reporting Procedures. 28 January 1999

TRADOC PAM 11-9 Blueprint of the Battlefield. 27 April 1990

### Soldier Training Publications

STP 5-12B24-SM-TG MOS 12B, Combat Engineer, Skill Levels 2/3/4, Soldier's Manual and Trainer's Guide. 28 March 2003

### Technical Manuals

TM 11-5805-262-12 Operator's and Unit Maintenance Manual for Switchboards, Telephone, Manual, SB-22/PT (NSN 5805-00-257-3602) and SB-22A/PT (5805-00-715-6171) (Including Tone Signaling Adapter, TA-977/PT (5805-01-040-9653)). 15 June 1990

TM 11-5805-294-12 Operator's and Organizational Maintenance Manual for Manual Telephone Switchboard, SB-993/GT (NSN 5805-00-708-2202). 8 September 1983

TM 750-244-2 Procedures for Destruction of Electronics Materiel to Prevent Enemy Use (Electronics Command). 14 March 1972

TM 750-244-3 Procedures for Destruction of Equipment to Prevent Enemy Use (Mobility Equipment Command). 23 September 1969

TM 750-244-6 Procedures for Destruction of Tank-Automotive Equipment to Prevent Enemy Use (US Army Tank-Automotive Command). 3 October 1972

TM 750-244-7 Procedures for Destruction of Equipment in Federal Supply Classifications 1000, 1005, 1010, 1015, 1020, 1025, 1030, 1055, 1090 and 1095 to Prevent Enemy Use (Reprinted w/Basic Incl C1). 18 June 1970

### Training Circulars

TC 24-20 Tactical Wire and Cable Techniques. 3 October 1988

TC 25-20 A Leader's Guide to After Action Reviews. 30 September 1993

TC 25-6 Force-on-Force Collective Training Using the Tactical Engagement Simulation Training System. 3 October 1995

**This page is intentionally left blank.**

**ARTEP 5-027-35-MTP**  
**1 August 2005**

By Order of the Secretary of the Army:

PETER J. SCHOOMAKER  
General, United States Army  
Chief of Staff

Official:



SANDRA R. RILEY  
Administrative Assistant to the  
Secretary of the Army  
0519401

DISTRIBUTION:

*Active Army, Army National Guard, and US Army Reserve:* Not to be distributed. Electronic media only.

